

## Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification 1.0

OASIS Standard

1 September 2008

### Specification URIs:

#### This Version:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/os/sdd-spec-v1.0-os.html>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/os/sdd-spec-v1.0-os.doc>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/os/sdd-spec-v1.0-os.pdf>

#### Previous Version:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/sdd-spec-v1.0-cs01.html>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/sdd-spec-v1.0-cs01.doc>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/sdd-spec-v1.0-cs01.pdf>

#### Latest Version:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-spec-v1.0.html>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-spec-v1.0.doc>

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-spec-v1.0.pdf>

### Technical Committee:

OASIS Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) TC

### Chair(s):

Brent Miller, IBM Corporation

### Editor(s):

Julia McCarthy, IBM Corporation

Robert Dickau, Macrovision Corporation

Merri Jensen, SAS Institute, Inc.

### Related work:

None

### Declared XML Namespace(s):

sdd-common=<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/common>

sdd-pd=<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/packageDescriptor>

sdd-dd=<http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/deploymentDescriptor>

### Abstract:

This specification defines schema for two XML document types: *Package Descriptors* and *Deployment Descriptors*. Package Descriptors define characteristics of a package used to deploy a solution. Deployment Descriptors define characteristics of the content of a solution package, including the requirements that are relevant for creation, configuration and maintenance of the solution content. The semantics of the descriptors are fully defined, allowing software implementations to precisely understand the intent of the descriptor authors and to use the information provided in the descriptors to support solution deployment.

### Status:

This document was last revised or approved by the OASIS Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) Technical Committee on the above date. The level of approval is also listed above. Check

44 the "Latest Version" or "Latest Approved Version" location noted above for possible later revisions  
45 of this document.

46 Technical Committee members should send comments on this specification to the Technical  
47 Committee's email list. Others should send comments to the Technical Committee by using the  
48 "Send A Comment" button on the Technical Committee's web page at [http://www.oasis-  
open.org/committees/sdd/](http://www.oasis-<br/>49 open.org/committees/sdd/).

50 For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to  
51 implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the  
52 Intellectual Property Rights section of the Technical Committee web page ([http://www.oasis-  
open.org/committees/sdd/ipr.php](http://www.oasis-<br/>53 open.org/committees/sdd/ipr.php)).

54 The non-normative errata page for this specification is located at [http://www.oasis-  
open.org/committees/sdd/](http://www.oasis-<br/>55 open.org/committees/sdd/).

56

---

57 **Notices**

58 Copyright © OASIS® 2007, 2008. All Rights Reserved.

59 All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual  
60 Property Rights Policy (the "OASIS IPR Policy"). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

61 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that  
62 comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published,  
63 and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice  
64 and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may  
65 not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as  
66 needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical  
67 Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must  
68 be followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

69 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors  
70 or assigns.

71 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS  
72 DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY  
73 WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY  
74 OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A  
75 PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

76 OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would  
77 necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard,  
78 to notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to  
79 such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that  
80 produced this specification.

81 OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of  
82 any patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent  
83 holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR  
84 Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such  
85 claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

86 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that  
87 might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or  
88 the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it  
89 represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS' procedures with  
90 respect to rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be  
91 found on the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any  
92 assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license  
93 or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee  
94 Specification or OASIS Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no  
95 representation that any information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or  
96 that any claims in such list are, in fact, Essential Claims.

97 The name "OASIS", is a trademark of OASIS, the owner and developer of this specification, and should  
98 be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and  
99 implementation and use of, specifications, while reserving the right to enforce its marks against  
100 misleading uses. Please see <http://www.oasis-open.org/who/trademark.php> for above guidance.

101

---

# 102 Table of Contents

103	Notices .....	3
104	Table of Contents .....	4
105	1 Introduction .....	9
106	1.1 Terminology .....	9
107	1.2 Purpose .....	9
108	1.3 Scope .....	10
109	1.4 Audience .....	10
110	1.5 How to Read this Document .....	10
111	1.6 Motivation .....	10
112	1.7 Requirements .....	11
113	1.8 XML Namespaces .....	13
114	1.9 Notational Conventions .....	13
115	1.10 General Document Conventions .....	13
116	1.11 Diagram Conventions .....	13
117	1.12 Normative References .....	15
118	1.13 Non-Normative References .....	15
119	2 Solution Deployment Descriptor Overview .....	16
120	2.1 Package and Deployment Descriptors .....	16
121	2.2 Topology .....	16
122	2.3 Content and Artifacts .....	16
123	2.4 Resulting and Changed Resources .....	17
124	2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies .....	17
125	2.6 Constraints .....	18
126	2.7 Requirements .....	18
127	2.8 Conditions .....	18
128	2.9 Variables .....	18
129	3 Package Descriptor .....	19
130	3.1 PackageDescriptor .....	19
131	3.1.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary .....	19
132	3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes .....	19
133	3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup .....	20
134	3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes .....	20
135	3.3 PackageIdentityType .....	22
136	3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary .....	22
137	3.3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes .....	22
138	3.4 IdentityType .....	24
139	3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary .....	24
140	3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes .....	25
141	3.5 MaintenanceInformationType .....	26
142	3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary .....	26
143	3.5.2 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes .....	26
144	3.6 FixIdentityType .....	27
145	3.6.1 FixIdentityType Property Summary .....	27

146	3.6.2 FixIdentityType Property Usage Notes .....	27
147	3.7 BuildInformationType.....	27
148	3.7.1 BuildInformationType Property Summary .....	28
149	3.7.2 BuildInformationType Property Usage Notes .....	28
150	3.8 ManufacturerType.....	28
151	3.8.1 ManufacturerType Property Summary .....	28
152	3.8.2 ManufacturerType Property Usage Notes.....	28
153	3.9 LocationType .....	29
154	3.9.1 LocationType Property Summary.....	29
155	3.9.2 LocationType Property Usage Notes .....	29
156	3.10 VersionType.....	29
157	3.11 ContentsType .....	29
158	3.11.1 ContentsType Property Summary.....	29
159	3.11.2 ContentsType Property Usage Notes .....	30
160	3.12 ContentType .....	30
161	3.12.1 ContentType Property Summary.....	30
162	3.12.2 ContentType Property Usage Notes .....	30
163	3.13 DigestInfoGroup.....	31
164	3.13.1 DigestInfoGroup Property Usage Notes.....	31
165	4 Deployment Descriptor.....	32
166	4.1 DeploymentDescriptor .....	32
167	4.1.1 DeploymentDescriptor Property Summary.....	33
168	4.1.2 DeploymentDescriptor Property Usage Notes .....	33
169	4.2 Topology .....	34
170	4.2.1 TopologyType.....	35
171	4.2.2 ResourceType .....	36
172	4.2.3 PropertyType.....	39
173	4.2.4 ResultingPropertyType.....	39
174	4.3 Atomic Content Elements .....	40
175	4.3.1 InstallableUnitType.....	41
176	4.3.2 ConfigurationUnitType.....	44
177	4.3.3 ArtifactType .....	46
178	4.3.4 InstallationArtifactsType .....	49
179	4.3.5 ConfigurationArtifactsType .....	50
180	4.3.6 OperationListType.....	50
181	4.3.7 OperationType.....	50
182	4.3.8 ArgumentListType .....	51
183	4.3.9 ArgumentType.....	51
184	4.3.10 OutputVariableListType.....	52
185	4.3.11 OutputVariableType .....	53
186	4.3.12 AdditionalContentType .....	53
187	4.3.13 SubstitutionType.....	54
188	4.3.14 CompletionType .....	55
189	4.4 Constraints.....	56
190	4.4.1 CapacityConstraintType.....	57

191	4.4.2 CapacityValueType .....	58
192	4.4.3 ConsumptionConstraintType.....	59
193	4.4.4 ConsumptionConstraintValueType .....	60
194	4.4.5 PropertyConstraintType .....	61
195	4.4.6 PropertyValueListType .....	61
196	4.4.7 VersionConstraintType.....	62
197	4.4.8 VersionConstraintValueType.....	63
198	4.4.9 VersionValueType .....	63
199	4.4.10 VersionRangeType.....	64
200	4.4.11 MaxVersionType .....	65
201	4.4.12 UniquenessConstraintType .....	65
202	4.4.13 RelationshipConstraintType .....	66
203	4.5 Conditions .....	67
204	4.5.1 ConditionType .....	67
205	4.5.2 AlternativeConditionalType .....	69
206	4.5.3 ConditionalResourceConstraintType .....	70
207	4.5.4 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType .....	72
208	4.6 Variables .....	73
209	4.6.1 VariableExpressionType .....	73
210	4.6.2 BaseVariableType .....	74
211	4.6.3 VariablesType .....	75
212	4.6.4 ParametersType.....	76
213	4.6.5 BaseParameterType .....	77
214	4.6.6 IntegerParameterType .....	78
215	4.6.7 BoundaryType .....	79
216	4.6.8 StringParameterType .....	80
217	4.6.9 StringCaseType.....	81
218	4.6.10 BooleanParameterType .....	81
219	4.6.11 URIPParameterType .....	81
220	4.6.12 ResourcePropertyType .....	82
221	4.6.13 DerivedVariableType .....	83
222	4.6.14 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType .....	83
223	4.7 Requirements .....	84
224	4.7.1 RequirementsType .....	84
225	4.7.2 RequirementType.....	85
226	4.7.3 AlternativeRequirementType.....	87
227	4.7.4 ResourceConstraintGroup.....	88
228	4.7.5 RequirementResourceConstraintType .....	90
229	4.7.6 InternalDependencyType .....	91
230	4.7.7 DependencyType .....	92
231	4.7.8 RequiredBaseType.....	93
232	4.7.9 RequiredBaseConstraintType .....	94
233	4.7.10 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType .....	96
234	4.8 Resulting and Changed Resources.....	97
235	4.8.1 ResultingResourceType .....	97

236	4.8.2 ResultingChangeType .....	99
237	4.8.3 RelationshipType .....	101
238	4.9 Composite Content Elements .....	101
239	4.9.1 CompositeInstallableType .....	103
240	4.9.2 CompositeUnitType .....	106
241	4.10 Aggregation .....	108
242	4.10.1 ReferencedPackageType .....	112
243	4.10.2 ResourceMapType .....	115
244	4.10.3 ResultingResourceMapType .....	116
245	4.10.4 ResultingChangeMapType .....	118
246	4.10.5 RequisitesType .....	119
247	4.11 Base Content .....	120
248	4.11.1 BaseContentType .....	120
249	4.12 Content Selectability .....	121
250	4.12.1 SelectableContentType .....	121
251	4.12.2 GroupsType .....	122
252	4.12.3 GroupType .....	123
253	4.12.4 FeaturesType .....	124
254	4.12.5 FeatureType .....	125
255	4.12.6 NestedFeatureType .....	126
256	4.12.7 MultiplicityType .....	129
257	4.12.8 FeatureReferenceType .....	130
258	4.12.9 ContentElementReferenceType .....	130
259	4.12.10 PackageFeatureReferenceType .....	131
260	4.12.11 ConstrainedResourceType .....	131
261	4.12.12 MultiplicityConstraintType .....	132
262	4.12.13 RequiredContentSelectionType .....	132
263	4.12.14 ContentSelectionFeatureType .....	133
264	4.12.15 MultiSelectType .....	134
265	4.13 Localization .....	134
266	4.13.1 LocalizationContentType .....	135
267	4.13.2 LocalizationUnitType .....	136
268	4.13.3 CompositeLocalizationUnitType .....	139
269	4.13.4 LanguageSelectionsType .....	142
270	4.13.5 OptionalLanguagesType .....	142
271	4.13.6 LanguagesType .....	143
272	4.13.7 LanguageType .....	143
273	4.13.8 LanguageSetType .....	144
274	4.14 Display Information .....	145
275	4.14.1 DescriptionGroup .....	145
276	4.14.2 DisplayElementGroup .....	145
277	4.14.3 DisplayTextType .....	146
278	5 Conformance .....	147
279	5.1 General Conformance Statements .....	147
280	5.2 Conformance Levels .....	147

281	5.2.1 CL Capabilities .....	147
282	5.2.2 Conformance Level Differences .....	148
283	5.3 Profiles .....	150
284	5.3.1 Profile Creation.....	150
285	5.3.2 Profile Publication.....	150
286	5.3.3 Profile Applicability .....	151
287	5.4 Compatibility Statements .....	151
288	5.5 Conformance Clause .....	151
289	5.5.1 Conformance for Users of This Specification .....	151
290	5.5.2 Conformance for This Specification Itself.....	151
291	A. Schema File List.....	153
292	B. Acknowledgements .....	154
293		

---

## 294 1 Introduction

295 The *Solution Deployment Descriptor* (SDD) specification defines a standard, in the form of a schema for  
296 XML documents, called *Solution Deployment Descriptors*, or *SDDs*. SDDs define metadata that describes  
297 the packaging and deployment characteristics of resources that are relevant for their lifecycle  
298 management, including creation, configuration and maintenance.

### 299 A.1 Terminology

300 The following terms are used in this specification in a specialized sense that might differ from definitions  
301 elsewhere.

#### 302 **Artifact**

303 Zero or more files and/or metadata used to perform a *deployment lifecycle* operation on a  
304 *resource*.

#### 305 **Deployment lifecycle**

306 The stages marking maturation of a *solution*: develop, package, integrate, manufacture, install,  
307 configure, evaluate, deploy into production, upgrade and/or update, uninstall.

#### 308 **Host Resource**

309 A resource that provides the execution environment for another resource.

#### 310 **Package**

311 A set of artifacts used to perform *deployment lifecycle* operations on a group of related resources  
312 that make up a solution.

#### 313 **Resource**

314 A particular element of a computing environment, such as a computer system, an operating  
315 system, a Web server, a software application, or a complex *solution*.

#### 316 **Solution**

317 One or more interrelated *resources* on which *deployment lifecycle* operations can be performed.

#### 318 **Target Resource**

319 A resource that processes *artifacts* to perform *deployment lifecycle* operations on another  
320 resource. The *host resource* often serves as the target resource.

#### 321 **Topology**

322 The physical or logical layout of a *solution's resources*.

#### 323 **Update (n.)**

324 A *package* that replaces a limited set of the *resources* in a *solution* instance. An update does not  
325 require migration.

#### 326 **Upgrade (n.)**

327 A *package* that replaces all, or a significant portion of, the *resources* used in a *solution*. An  
328 upgrade might or might not require migration.

### 329 1.1 Purpose

330 The purpose of this document is to provide the normative specification of the SDD, including concepts,  
331 structure, syntax, semantics and usage.

## 332 1.2 Scope

333 This document is the specification for the SDD. It consists of both normative and non-normative prose,  
334 diagrams, schema and examples. The document is intended to facilitate an understanding of the SDD  
335 concepts, structure, syntax, semantics and usage. This document is not intended to be a tutorial.

336 This document is the full SDD specification, but it also is augmented with other documents produced by  
337 the SDD TC, including the SDD XML Schema and Examples (see Appendix [A]), **[SDDP]**, **[SDDSP]** and  
338 the set of SDD profiles (see section [5.3]), as well as documents produced by others (see section [5.3.1]).

## 339 1.3 Audience

340 This document is intended to assist those who require an understanding of the nature and details of the  
341 SDD. This includes architects, developers, solution integrators and service/support personnel who  
342 generate, consume, or otherwise use SDDs, as well as those who develop tooling and applications for  
343 constructing and deploying SDDs.

## 344 1.4 How to Read this Document

345 The various audiences of this specification might have different objectives and purposes when reading  
346 the document. You might wish to generally understand the SDD, or learn the details of the SDD to create  
347 or consume SDDs, or use the document as a reference.

- 348 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the major capabilities and characteristics of the SDD and how they fit  
349 together, start by reading the Introductions to the major sections: [3], [4] and [4.1]–[4.14].
- 350 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the major elements of the SDD and how they work together to  
351 accomplish the goals of this specification, read in addition to the above, the introductions to each of  
352 the type sections [3.1]–[3.13] and the type subsections within sections [4.2]–[4.14].
- 353 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the syntax of the SDD, look at the tables in each of the Property  
354 Summary sections.
- 355 ▪ If your purpose is to understand the semantics of the elements and attributes of the SDD, read the  
356 Property Usage Notes sections.
- 357 ▪ If your purpose is to understand only the package descriptor, subset the above suggestions to focus  
358 on the sub-sections within section [3].
- 359 ▪ If your purpose is to understand only the deployment descriptor, subset the above suggestions to  
360 focus on the sub-sections within section [4].

## 361 1.5 Motivation

362 The motivation for producing this specification is best expressed in this excerpt from the SDD Technical  
363 Committee's charter:

364 *Deployment and lifecycle management of a set of interrelated software, hereinafter referred to as*  
365 *a solution, is a predominantly manual operation because there is currently no standardized way*  
366 *to express installation packaging for a multi-platform environment. Each hosting platform or*  
367 *operating system has its own format for expressing packaging of a single installable unit but,*  
368 *even on these homogeneous platforms, there is no standardized way to combine packages into a*  
369 *single aggregated unit without significant re-creation of the dependency and installation*  
370 *instructions. The problem is compounded when the solution is to be deployed across multiple,*  
371 *heterogeneous, platforms. A standard for describing the packaging and mechanism to express*  
372 *dependencies and various lifecycle management operations within the package would alleviate*  
373 *these problems and subsequently enable automation of these highly manual and error-prone*  
374 *tasks.*

375 *The purpose of this Technical Committee is to define XML schema to describe the characteristics*  
376 *of an installable unit (IU) of software that are relevant for core aspects of its deployment,*  
377 *configuration and maintenance. This document will be referred to as the Solution Deployment*  
378 *Descriptor (SDD).*

379 *SDDs will benefit member companies and the industry in general by providing a consistent model*  
380 *and semantics to address the needs of all aspects of the IT industry dealing with software*  
381 *deployment, configuration and lifecycle management. The benefits of this work include:*

- 382 • *ability to describe software solution packages for both single and multi-platform*  
383 *heterogeneous environments.*
- 384 • *ability to describe software solution packages independent of the software installation*  
385 *technology or supplier.*
- 386 • *ability to provide information necessary to permit full lifecycle maintenance of software*  
387 *solutions.*

## 388 **1.6 Requirements**

389 A summary of requirements satisfied by this SDD specification follows. Detailed requirements that support  
390 approved use cases are available at the SDD TC Web page, <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd>.

### 391 **Solution lifecycle management**

392 The SDD must provide information to support the complete lifecycle of a software solution.  
393 Certain key requirements are applicable to all phases of deployment lifecycle operation: planning,  
394 installation, configuration, maintenance, upgrade, migration and uninstallation.

### 395 **Solution requirements for environment to perform lifecycle** 396 **management tasks**

397 A deployment lifecycle operation on a target resource is often dependent on a certain set of  
398 conditions that must exist on the target. This set of pre-existing conditions is known as the  
399 *environment*. If successful deployment lifecycle operations are dependent on a certain set of pre-  
400 existing conditions (environment), then the SDD specification must support the ability to specify  
401 the required environment.

### 402 **Projected changes to environment**

403 The SDD specification must support the definition of environment changes that become effective  
404 once the lifecycle operation is complete.

### 405 **Solution instance variability**

406 The SDD specification must support the definition of the appropriate information for a runtime to  
407 vary the ways in which the solution can be deployed. This information is also needed to enable an  
408 integrator to control the variability according to the needs of their higher-level solution.

409 This variability includes the information to control (1) the subset of capability that can be  
410 deployed; (2) setting the initial configuration of the solution; and (3) varying the topology in which  
411 the solution can be deployed.

### 412 **Solution composition**

413 The SDD specification must support the ability for the author to compose solution packages from  
414 multiple components, products, or solutions.

### 415 **Solution and packaging identity**

416 The SDD specification must support the definition of identity information for the solution package,  
417 resources that make up the solution, and solution itself to support use cases including asset  
418 management, license management, support/update entitlement, component reuse during  
419 development, reports and queries from a package repository, identifying associated  
420 documentation, solution lifecycle management, traceability to build/development environment and  
421 problem management systems, correlation into the hosting environment, component reuse, and  
422 maintenance history. Also, the SDD specification must support the definition of the identity  
423 description information used by a runtime to assist a user in making correct decisions about  
424 solution installation. The SDD specification must support the definition of the information that  
425 uniquely identifies the SDD descriptor and the ability to identify the version of the SDD. The  
426 customer should be able to identify the solution packages with consistent names.

- 427 **Physical packaging**
- 428 Physical packaging information should be contained in a separate media descriptor. The
- 429 deployment model for a solution should be decoupled from the details of physical packaging. The
- 430 format and structure of the physical packaging is outside the scope of SDD v1.0.
- 431 **Interoperability with existing software packaging technologies**
- 432 The SDD specification must support the ability for the author to compose solutions from existing
- 433 software packages that do not have an SDD. This means that the SDD should be able to
- 434 describe existing software packages.
- 435 **Conform to external standards**
- 436 The SDD specification must provide for alternative descriptive text to be defined for any images,
- 437 animations, or audio information contained in the descriptor.
- 438 **Decision support**
- 439 Requirements to perform lifecycle management operations within various target environments
- 440 may not be satisfied in the target's current state but might be able to be satisfied with additional
- 441 operations. For example, successful deployment of a set of Java™<sup>1</sup> components is dependent on
- 442 the existence of a Java runtime environment that is not included with the solution. The SDD
- 443 should have the ability to specify information that will assist lifecycle management tools in
- 444 planning for, accessing and installing these external requirements.
- 445 **Specification organization**
- 446 The SDD specification must provide the semantic behavior expected by producers and
- 447 consumers of SDDs. This information allows for the producers to ensure that the consumers of
- 448 their SDDs will provide the support intended.
- 449 **Solution metadata**
- 450 The SDD metadata may not encompass all of the information about the solution in all contexts in
- 451 which the solution can be deployed. Additional metadata that is outside of the scope of the SDD
- 452 is available at the SDD TC Web page, <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd>.
- 453 **Globalization**
- 454 For all content in the SDD that would be displayed to a user, the specification must support the
- 455 definition of strings for multiple locales; for example, this content must be localizable.
- 456 **Align with other standards bodies**
- 457 Satisfying all the requirements listed here calls for extensive standardization in specific areas.
- 458 The requirements should thus be aligned with other appropriate standards bodies. The SDD
- 459 reuses existing OASIS and other standards where appropriate and aligns with other standards
- 460 bodies (for example, **[OGF-ACS]**) that are developing standards in the same domain as SDD.

---

<sup>1</sup> Java is a trademark or registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

## 461 1.7 XML Namespaces

462 The XML namespaces defined as part of this specification are:

- 463 ▪ **sdd-pd**: stands for the package descriptor portion of the SDD namespace.
- 464 ▪ **sdd-dd**: stands for the deployment descriptor portion of the SDD namespace.
- 465 ▪ **sdd-common**: stands for the common (shared) types, elements and groups of the SDD namespace.

466 For XML namespaces not defined as part of this specification, conventional XML namespace prefixes are  
467 used as follows, regardless of whether a namespace declaration is present in the example:

- 468 ▪ The prefix **xsd**: stands for the W3C XML Schema namespace [**XSD**].
- 469 ▪ The prefix **ds**: stands for the digital signature namespace [**XMLDSIG-CORE**].

## 470 1.8 Notational Conventions

471 Everything in the specification, including the Appendices, is considered normative except for the abstract,  
472 examples and any sections or other material marked as non-normative.

473 The keywords “MUST”, “MUST NOT”, “REQUIRED”, “SHALL”, “SHALL NOT”, “SHOULD”, “SHOULD  
474 NOT”, “RECOMMENDED”, “MAY” and “OPTIONAL” in this document are to be interpreted as described  
475 in [**RFC2119**].

476 These keywords are capitalized when used unambiguously to specify requirements or application  
477 features and behavior. When these words are not capitalized, they are meant in their natural-language  
478 sense.

## 479 1.9 General Document Conventions

480 In describing XML elements and attributes of the SDD schema, this document contains many cross-  
481 references. Such references appear as the referenced section number inside square brackets, for  
482 example, [4.5]. In electronic versions of this specification, the cross-references can act as links the target  
483 section.

484 The following property naming convention is used in the schema: Element and type names begin with an  
485 uppercase letter and attribute names begin with a lowercase letter.

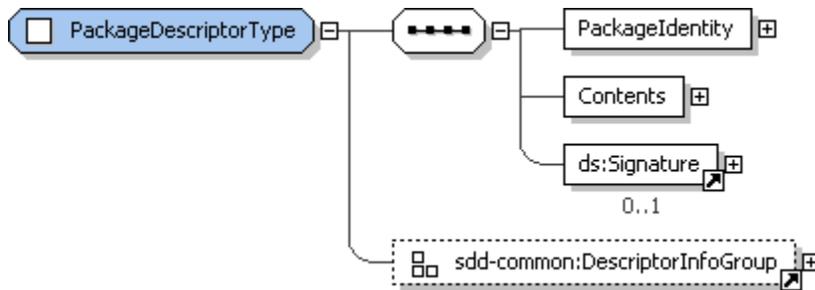
486 Italics are used to identify element and attribute names, type names and enumerated values defined by  
487 an SDD type.

488 In describing the XML schema, each section typically contains the following subsections:

- 489 ▪ A diagram illustrating the element, group, or type that is specified in the section.
- 490 ▪ Property Summary: A table listing the schema elements and attributes, along with the data type,  
491 cardinality and description for each one.  
492 When specified, extension points are listed in the tables with no name and a type of `xsd:any` for  
493 element extensions and `xsd:anyAttribute` for attribute extensions. Cardinality is also provided.  
494 When a type is an extension of another type, the extended type is listed in the table with no name and  
495 prefixed with [**extends**]. The extended type’s properties can be referenced from the appropriate  
496 section listed in the description column.  
497 When the schema specifies a default or fixed attribute value, that value is prefixed with two asterisks,  
498 as in **\*\*default value=“true”**.
- 499 ▪ Property Usage Notes: A list of the elements and attributes, along with more detailed prose  
500 descriptions of the properties and how they fit into the schema as a whole.
- 501 ▪ Not all sections contain every one of the preceding subsections.

## 502 1.10 Diagram Conventions

503 Sections 3 and 4 of this specification contain diagrams that illustrate the structure of elements, data types  
504 and groups used throughout the SDD schema. Figure 1 is an example of this type of diagram.



505  
506 **Figure 1: Sample XML structure diagram.**

507 Elements are represented by the element name inside a rectangle. A rectangle with a solid border  
508 denotes an element.

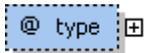
509 Where appropriate, the cardinality of an element is indicated by a rectangle with the cardinality listed  
510 underneath, using the form “min..max”. For example, “1..∞” indicates a minimum of one occurrence of the  
511 element and an unbounded upper limit:



512  
513 References to global elements are denoted by a small arrow in the lower right corner of the element's  
514 rectangle:



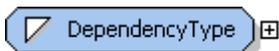
515  
516 Attributes are denoted by a “@” symbol followed by the attribute name, inside a dashed rectangle.



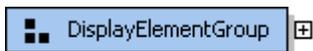
517  
518 Complex types are denoted by a rectangle with all the corners truncated and a white square followed by  
519 the element name:



520  
521 Simple types are denoted by a rectangle with all the corners truncated and a white triangle followed by  
522 the element name:

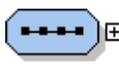


523  
524 Groups are denoted by a rectangle with three small squares followed by the group name: black squares  
525 and a solid rectangle indicate element groups and white squares with a dashed rectangle indicate  
526 attribute groups:



527  
528 A plus sign on the right border of a component indicates hidden child elements or attributes. When  
529 hidden, the child elements are usually described in a separate section.

530 There are two connectors (or compositors) used in the SDD schema diagrams to combine elements:

531 ▪ A sequence of elements is indicated by the following symbol: 

532 ▪ A choice among elements is indicated by the following symbol: 

533 A large yellow box indicates a data type that is referenced.

534 Blue shading appearing in a figure has no significance; it simply indicates that a component was currently  
535 selected in the XML editor.

536 The XSD schema figures were created with <oXygen/>.

## 537 1.11 Normative References

- 538 [CL2\_Schema] Solution Deployment Descriptor Schema  
539 See Appendix [A] for location.
- 540 [CONFORM] OASIS, *OASIS Conformance Requirements for Specifications 1.0*,  
541 [http://www.oasis-](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance_requirements-v1.pdf)  
542 [open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance\\_requirements-v1.pdf](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance_requirements-v1.pdf).
- 543 [IANA-CHARSET] Internet Assigned Numbers Authority, *Character Sets*,  
544 <http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets>, modified December 2006.
- 545 [IETF-UUID] Internet Engineering Task Force Draft Specification,  
546 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4122.txt>.
- 547 [ISO639.2] Library of Congress, *Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages*,  
548 <http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/englangn.html>.
- 549 [ISO3166] International Organization for Standardization, *English Country Names and Code*  
550 *Elements*, [http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-](http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/list-en1.html)  
551 [lists/list-en1.html](http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/list-en1.html).
- 552 [RFC2119] S. Bradner, *Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*,  
553 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt>, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.
- 554 [RFC3066] H. Alvestrand, ed. *RFC 3066: Tags for the Identification of Languages* 1995,  
555 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3066.txt>.
- 556 [UNIT] Bureau International des Poids et Mesures, <http://www.bipm.fr>.
- 557 [XMLDSIG-CORE] Bartel et al., *XML-Signature Syntax and Processing*,  
558 <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlsig-core/>, W3C Recommendation, February 2002.
- 559 [XSD] W3C Schema Working Group, *XML Schema*, [http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/)  
560 [1/](http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/), W3C Recommendation, October 2004.
- 561

## 562 1.12 Non-Normative References

- 563 [CL1\_Schema] Solution Deployment Descriptor Conformance Level 1 Schema  
564 See Appendix [A] for location.
- 565 [CIM] Distributed Management Task Force, Inc., Common Information Model (CIM)  
566 <http://www.dmtf.org/standards/cim/>.
- 567 [OGF-ACS] Open Grid Forum, Application Contents Service WG (ACS-WG),  
568 [http://www.ogf.org/gf/group\\_info/view.php?group=acs-wg](http://www.ogf.org/gf/group_info/view.php?group=acs-wg).
- 569 [SDDP] Solution Deployment Descriptor Primer  
570 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-primer-v1.0.doc>  
571 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-primer-v1.0.pdf>  
572 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-primer-v1.0.html>
- 573 [SDDSP] Solution Deployment Descriptor Starter Profile  
574 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-starter-profile-v1.0.doc>  
575 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-starter-profile-v1.0.pdf>  
576 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-starter-profile-v1.0.html>  
577  
578  
579

580

---

## 2 Solution Deployment Descriptor Overview

581

### 2.1 Package and Deployment Descriptors

582  
583  
584  
585  
586  
587

The package descriptor defines package content which includes artifacts whose processing results in deployment of the software package. The deployment descriptor defines metadata associated with those artifacts. The SDD package descriptor defines the package identity, the package content and various other attributes of the package. Each SDD consists of exactly one deployment descriptor and one package descriptor. The deployment descriptor is where the topology, selectability, inputs, requirements and conditions of the deployment are described.

588

### 2.2 Topology

589  
590

The SDD's topology describes all the resources that may be required, created or modified when any of the deployment operations supported by the SDD are performed.

591  
592  
593  
594  
595  
596

Primary identifying characteristics of the resources can be defined in topology. The topology includes identification of hosts—hosted by relationships between resources. It is usual that only a subset of the resources described in topology will play a role in any particular deployment. This is determined by the selection of content elements for the particular deployment. The resources that are required, created or modified by the content elements in scope for the deployment are the ones that will participate in the deployment and so will be associated with resources in the deployment environment.

597  
598  
599

At deployment time, definitions of the resources that participate in that particular deployment are associated with actual resource instances in the deployment environment. The mechanism for associating resource definitions with resource instances is not defined by the SDD.

600  
601

The only resource definitions in the SDD are in topology. All other mention of resources in the SDD are references to the resource definitions in the topology.

602

### 2.3 Content and Artifacts

603  
604  
605

Metadata throughout the deployment descriptor is associated with package content in the definition of atomic content elements. The atomic content elements are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* and *LocalizationUnit*. These are the only content elements that define *Artifacts* elements.

606  
607  
608  
609  
610  
611  
612  
613

Artifact elements identify an artifact file or set of files defined in package content whose processing will perform all or a portion of the deployment for a particular deployment lifecycle operation. Artifact elements define the inputs and outputs, substitution values and types associated with the artifact files. The content element's target resource, identified by *targetResourceRef*, processes the artifact files with the defined inputs to perform deployment operations. Examples of artifact types include zip files, rpm files and executable install files. Artifact types are not defined by this specification. The artifact types defined in the SDD need to be understood by software that processes the SDD. *Profiles* are used to communicate the artifact types that an implementation is capable of processing [5.3].

614  
615  
616

Composite content elements organize the content of an SDD but do not define artifacts used to deploy SDD content. There are three types of composite content elements: *CompositeInstallable*, *CompositeUnit* and *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.

617  
618  
619  
620  
621  
622

*CompositeInstallable* is used any time that more than one content element is defined in support of one operation on the package; any time aggregation of SDDs is needed; or any time the package includes selectable content. *CompositeInstallable* is the root of a content hierarchy that supports a single deployment lifecycle operation. It can define a base content hierarchy, a localization content hierarchy and a selectable content hierarchy that includes selection criteria. One SDD can have more than one *CompositeInstallable*—each supporting a different operation.

623  
624

*CompositeUnit* is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content hierarchies. *CompositeUnits* can define *InstallableUnits*, *ConfigurationUnits*, *ContainedPackages* and other

625 *CompositeUnits*. Requirements, conditions and variables that are common to all content elements defined  
626 by the *CompositeUnit* can be defined in the *CompositeUnit* to avoid repetition. Within the selectable  
627 content hierarchy, a *CompositeUnit* can provide an efficient means for selection of a set of related content  
628 elements by a *feature*.

629 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* serves the same purposes as *CompositeUnit* within the *LocalizatonContent*  
630 hierarchy.

631 SDD packages can aggregate other SDD packages. Metadata about the aggregation is defined in  
632 *ContainedPackage*, *ContainedLocalizationPackage* and *Requisite* elements. *ContainedPackage*  
633 elements are a content element that can be defined anywhere in the base and selectable content  
634 hierarchies. *ContainedLocalizationPackages* are content elements that can be defined in the localization  
635 content hierarchy. *Requisites* are packages that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy requirements in  
636 the aggregating SDD. They are not content of the SDD package. The type of all three of these elements  
637 is *ReferencedPackageType*. The term “referenced package” is used in this specification when referring to  
638 these elements as a group. The term “referenced SDD” is used when referring to any aggregated SDD.

639 Each referenced package element can further constrain the deployment of the referenced SDD by  
640 defining additional requirements; by mapping resources defined in the aggregating SDD to those defined  
641 in the referenced SDD; and by determining feature selections for deployment of the referenced SDD.

## 642 **2.4 Resulting and Changed Resources**

643 Deployment of an SDD package creates or modifies software resources. These resources are included in  
644 the topology definition and described in more detail in *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange*  
645 elements.

646 The SDD author can choose to model resulting and modified resources at a very granular level, at a very  
647 coarse level; at any level in between, or not at all. An example of modeling resulting resources at a  
648 granular level would be modeling every file created by the deployment as a resulting resource. An  
649 example of modeling resulting resources at a very coarse level would be modeling the software product  
650 created by deployment as a single resulting resource. The choice depends on the needs of the solution  
651 deployment. If a resource is not modeled in the SDD, no requirements can be expressed on it, no  
652 conditions can be based on it and no variables can be set from values of its properties. It cannot play any  
653 of the roles described for resources in the *ResourceType* section of this document [4.2.2].

## 654 **2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies**

655 Each *CompositeInstallable* element can define three types of content hierarchies. Base content is the  
656 default content for the deployment lifecycle operation associated with the *CompositeInstallable*. This is  
657 content that will be deployed whenever the associated operation is performed on the SDD package. Base  
658 content may be conditioned on characteristics of the deployment environment but it is not selectable by  
659 the deployer.

660 The SDD author can define selectable subsets of optional content in the selectable content hierarchy.  
661 The selection criteria include features and groups of features that select content from the selectable  
662 content hierarchy. Selectability, as used in the SDD, is a characteristic of the deployment lifecycle  
663 operation and the package. For example, the decision to provide selectability for one operation in one  
664 package has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided in another package related to the same  
665 software. It also has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided for a different operation within  
666 the same package.

667 Localization content is the third type of content hierarchy. Localization refers to enabling a particular piece  
668 of software for support for one or more languages. Anything that needs to be deployed to provide support  
669 for a particular language in that software is considered localization content. Translated materials are a  
670 primary, but not the only, example of localization content.

671 Localization content is similar in many ways to other content, but there are important differences in how  
672 localization content is selected for deployment that lead to the need for a separate content hierarchy and  
673 separate types. There are two criteria for determining that localization content is in scope for a particular  
674 deployment.

- 675     ▪ The first criterion has to do with the language or languages supported by the localization content. At  
676     least one of the languages must be in scope for the content to be selected.
- 677     ▪ The second criterion has to do with the availability of the resources to be localized—the localization  
678     base. The localization base may be a resource deployed by base or selectable content, or it may be  
679     a resource previously deployed and found in the deployment environment.

## 680    **2.6 Constraints**

681    The SDD author needs to communicate constraints on resources for a variety of purposes.

- 682    • Some constraints must be met for the requirements of a content element to be met.
- 683    • Other constraints must be met for a resource to serve as the required base for an update.
- 684    • Still others must be met to satisfy a condition that determines the applicability of a content element or  
685    completion action.

686    The Constraint types are:

- 687    ▪ *CapacityConstraint*
- 688    ▪ *ConsumptionConstraint*
- 689    ▪ *PropertyConstraint*
- 690    ▪ *VersionConstraint*
- 691    ▪ *UniquenessConstraint*
- 692    ▪ *RelationshipConstraint*

## 693    **2.7 Requirements**

694    Requirements are defined by content elements. A requirement consists of resource constraints that the  
695    SDD author states MUST be met prior to successful deployment or use of the software described by the  
696    SDD package. Each requirement definition lists one or more deployment lifecycle operations to which the  
697    requirement applies. When the requirement is specified in an atomic content element, the operation  
698    associates the requirement with artifacts within the atomic content element

699    When a requirement can be satisfied in more than one way, alternatives can be defined within a  
700    requirement. A requirement is considered met when any one of the alternatives is satisfied.

## 701    **2.8 Conditions**

702    Conditions are expressed on characteristics of resources in the deployment environment. Conditions are  
703    used to indicate when particular elements of the SDD are applicable, or when they should be ignored.

704    Conditions are not requirements. Failure to satisfy a condition does not indicate a failure; it simply means  
705    the conditioned element should be ignored. Conditions are used to:

- 706    ▪ determine if a content element is applicable
- 707    ▪ choose from among values for a variable
- 708    ▪ determine when a feature is applicable
- 709    ▪ determine when a particular result is applicable
- 710    ▪ determine if a particular completion action is necessary.

711    Because conditions are always based on the characteristics of resources, they are expressed using  
712    resource constraints.

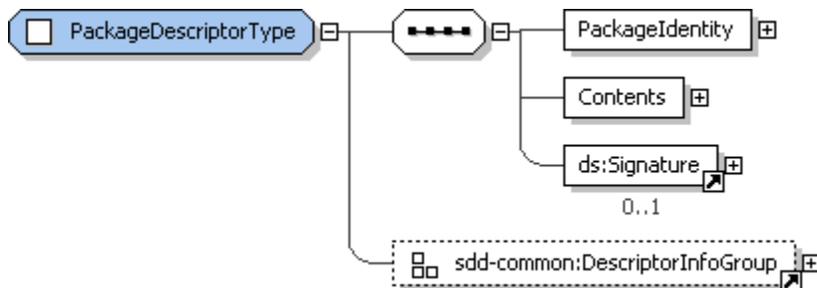
## 713    **2.9 Variables**

714    Variables provide a way to associate user inputs, resource property values, fixed strings and values  
715    derived from these with input arguments for artifacts and with constraints on resources.

## 716 3 Package Descriptor

717 A package descriptor is an XML document that provides information about the identity and the contents of  
 718 a software package. A software package is a bundle of one or several content elements that deploy or  
 719 remove computer software; add features to existing software; or apply maintenance to existing software.  
 720 Each package descriptor is associated with a deployment descriptor.

### 721 3.1 PackageDescriptor



722  
 723 **Figure 2: PackageDescriptor structure.**

724 The root element of a package descriptor XML document is *PackageDescriptor*. *PackageDescriptor*  
 725 includes elements that describe the package identity and the contents that make up the package. The  
 726 *PackageDescriptor* includes the associated deployment descriptor XML document by defining a *Content*  
 727 element with a *purpose* attribute set to *deploymentDescriptor*.

### 728 3.1.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary

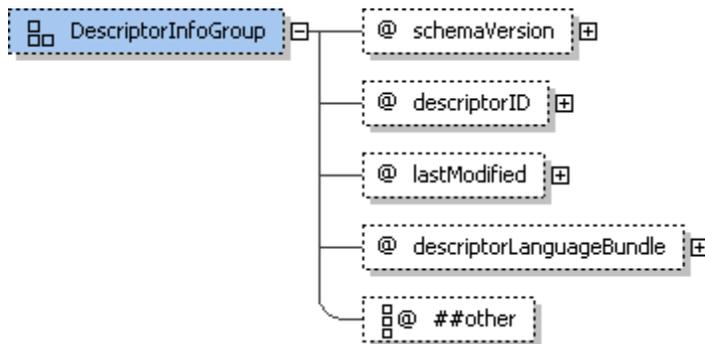
Name	Data Type	*	Description
PackageIdentity	PackageIdentityType	1	Human-understandable identity information for the software package.
Contents	ContentsType	1	A list of package contents.
ds:Signature	ds:SignatureType	0..1	A signature for the package descriptor.
schemaVersion	xsd:string	1	The descriptor complies with this version of the Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification. **fixed value="1.0"
descriptorID	UUIDType	1	Identifier of a particular package's descriptor.
lastModified	xsd:dateTime	1	The time the descriptor was last modified.
descriptorLanguageBundle	xsd:token	0..1	The root name of language bundle files containing translations for display text elements in the PackageDescriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

### 729 3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes

- 730 ▪ **PackageIdentity:** The *PackageIdentity* element provides identity information about the software  
 731 package that can be used by the consumer of the package for deployment planning or aggregation of  
 732 the package into a larger solution.  
 733 See the *PackageIdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.3].

- 734 ▪ **Contents:** The *Contents* element defines a list of one or more *Content* elements describing all the  
735 files that are part of the package. All files in the package **MUST** be defined in *Contents*.  
736 See the *ContentsType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.11].
- 737 ▪ **ds:Signature:** The package descriptor and each file in the package **MAY** be digitally signed. It is  
738 **RECOMMENDED** that they be digitally signed by using an XML-Signature [**XMLDSIG-CORE**].  
739 The signature element is an enveloped signature over the SDD package. Note that each *Content*  
740 element included in the package is digitally signed indirectly via this digest. Files can also be  
741 individually signed in the *Content* element.
- 742 ▪ **schemaVersion, descriptorID, lastModified, descriptorLanguageBundle:** See the  
743 *DescriptorInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.2].

## 744 3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup



745  
746 **Figure 3: DescriptorInfoGroup structure.**

747 The attributes defined by *DescriptorInfoGroup* are included in both *PackageDescriptor* and  
748 *DeploymentDescriptor*.

### 749 3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes

- 750 ▪ **schemaVersion:** The *schemaVersion* attribute identifies the Solution Deployment Descriptor  
751 specification version to which the descriptor conforms. It **MUST** have a fixed value of “1.0”.
- 752 ▪ **descriptorID:** The *descriptorID* attribute, combined with the *lastModified* attribute value, provides a  
753 unique identifier for the descriptor. The *descriptorID* value **MUST** be unique within the scope of use of  
754 the deployment descriptor or package descriptor. The *descriptorID* attribute is an instance of  
755 *UUIDType*, which is based on `xsd:hexBinary` with length 16. This enables use of a 128-bit UUID  
756 [**IETF-UUID**]. The *descriptorID* value supports descriptor updates by allowing updated descriptors to  
757 be correctly associated with an earlier version of the same descriptor.

758 For example, if a descriptor contains errors, it may be replaced by an error-free version using the  
759 same *descriptorID* value but a different *lastModified* value.

- 760 ▪ **lastModified:** The *lastModified* value can be used to differentiate between different versions of the  
761 same descriptor, for example, the descriptor for one particular package. Comparison of *lastModified*  
762 values can be used to determine which descriptor is newer.

763 The *lastModified* attribute **MUST** be defined as a value that conforms to the `xsd:dateTime` type as  
764 defined in [**XSD**] and **MUST** match the following lexical representation: `[ - ]CCYY-MM-  
765 DDThh:mm:ss [ Z | ( + | - )hh:mm ]`. This is a combination of a complete date and time of day, where  
766 the time zone can be specified as Z (UTC) or (+|-)hh:mm.

767 For example, the following are valid values for the *lastModified* attribute:

- 768 ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32:52
- 769 ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32:52+02:00
- 770 ▪ 2001-10-26T19:32:52Z

771           ▪ 2001-10-26T19:32:52+00:00

772           ▪ -2001-10-26T21:32:52

773           ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32:52.12679

774           However, the following values would be invalid:

775           ▪ 2001-10-26

776           ▪ 2001-10-26T21:32

777           ▪ 01-10-26T21:32

778           ▪ 2001-10-26T25:32:52+02:00

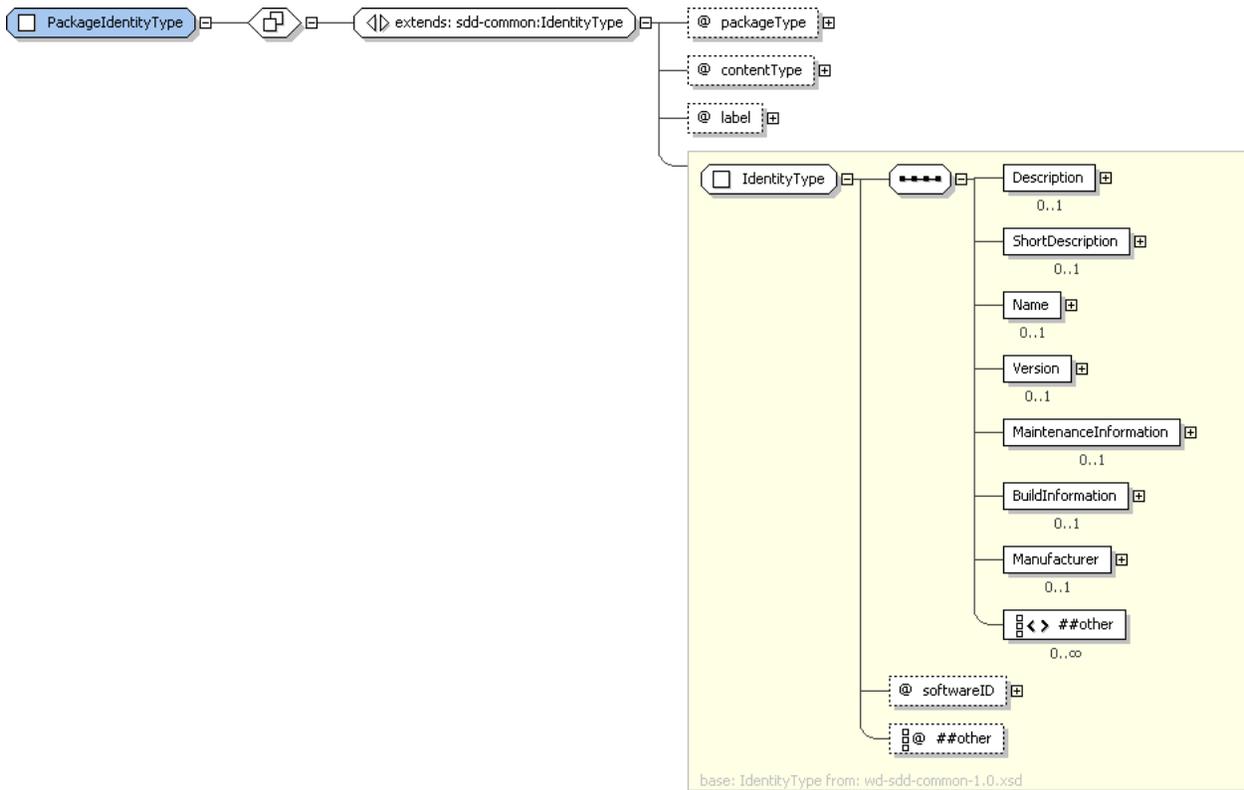
779           The first three invalid examples do not specify all the required parts, and the fourth includes an  
780           out of range hours part, “25”.

781       ▪ **descriptorLanguageBundle**: Language translations for elements of *DisplayTextType* in the  
782       descriptor MAY be included in the solution package. Note that these are not translations for the  
783       software deployed by the package, but rather translations only for the text in the descriptors  
784       themselves. The root name of the files containing these translations can be specified in the  
785       *descriptorLanguageBundle* attribute, which is an instance of `xsd:token`. Language bundles are  
786       associated with specific locales at run time using Java-style resource bundle resolution; that is, the  
787       bundle file names SHOULD take the form *languageBundle\_locale*, where *locale* consists of optional  
788       language, location (country) and variant codes, separated by an underscore character. Language  
789       codes consist of two lowercase letters [ISO639.2] and location codes consist of two uppercase letters  
790       [ISO3166].

791           For example, “SampleStrings\_en\_US” refers to the United States English version of the  
792           SampleStrings bundle and “SampleStrings\_ja” identifies the Japanese version of the same  
793           bundle.

794           See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

795 **3.3 PackageIdentityType**



796  
797 **Figure 4: PackageIdentityType structure.**

798 The software package described by the SDD can be identified for humans and package management  
799 software using the properties in *PackageIdentity*. The *PackageIdentity* is not to be confused with the  
800 identity of the deployed software, which is described in the resulting resource elements of the deployment  
801 descriptor; see the *ResultingResourceType* section [4.8.1].

802 **3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary**

Name	Data Type	*	Description
	[extends] IdentityType		See the IdentityType section for additional properties [3.4].
packageType	PackageTypeType	0..1	The type of the package, for example, "baseInstall" or "maintenance". **default value="baseInstall".
contentType	xsd:QName	0..1	The type of content provided by this package, for example, BIOS.
label	xsd:NCName	0..1	A programmatic label for this package.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

803 **3.3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes**

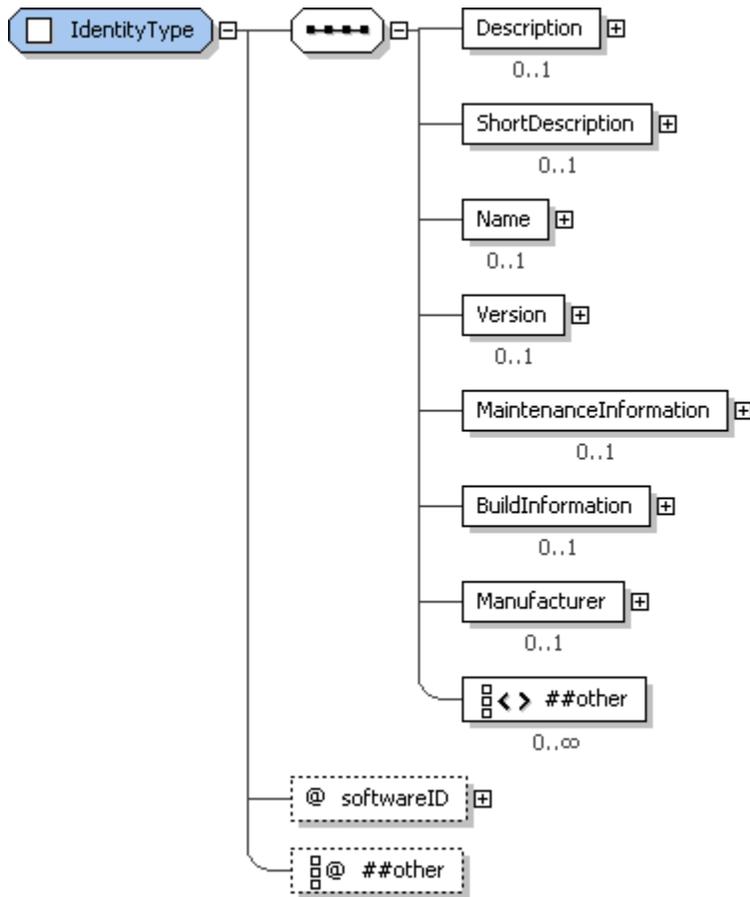
804 See the *IdentityType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [3.4].

- 805 **packageType:** The package type is provided to aid consumer understanding of the type of content  
806 contained in the package. A package can contain more than one type of content. In this case, a single  
807 *packageType* value should be selected that represents the primary content type as determined by the  
808 SDD author. The SDD defines a set of enumeration values in *PackageTypeType* which are  
809 extendable by the SDD author.

810 The enumerated types defined by the SDD are as follows:

- 811 • **baseInstall:** The value *baseInstall* indicates that the package provides a complete installation  
812 of the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain  
813 installable units with installation artifacts that install the primary solution resources.  
814 When *packageType* is not specified, this is the default value.
- 815 • **baseUninstall:** The value *baseUninstall* indicates that the package provides a complete  
816 uninstallation of the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors  
817 that contain installable units with uninstall artifacts that remove the primary solution  
818 resources.
- 819 • **configuration:** The value *configuration* indicates that the package configures the solution.  
820 This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain configuration units  
821 with configuration artifacts that configure the solution.
- 822 • **maintenance:** The value *maintenance* indicates that the package fixes one or more problems  
823 in the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain  
824 installable units with update artifacts.
- 825 • **modification:** The value *modification* indicates that the package modifies the function of the  
826 solution in some way such as by adding new function. This package type is associated with  
827 deployment descriptors that contain installable units with update artifacts.
- 828 • **replacement:** The value *replacement* indicates that the package installs a solution that  
829 replaces a previous version of the solution. Replacement MAY be associated with migration  
830 of data into the new solution and/or with deletion of the replaced solution. When associated  
831 with migration of data, installation or configuration artifacts within the solution package would  
832 perform the migration. When associated with deletion of the replaced solution, uninstall  
833 artifacts within the solution package would perform the deletion. This package type is  
834 associated with deployment descriptors that contain installable units with installation artifacts  
835 that deploy a set of resources that replace the set of resources associated with a previous  
836 version of the solution.
- 837 • **localization:** The value *localization* indicates that the package contains materials that  
838 localize deployed software for one or more languages.
- 839 ▪ **contentType:** The value of *contentType* is determined by the SDD manufacturer to communicate a  
840 characteristic of the package that MAY be used in the manufacturer's package management system  
841 or other manufacturer-specific tools that use the SDD. The SDD author chooses the values; they are  
842 not defined in this specification.
- 843 ▪ **label:** The label MAY be used as an index in a package management system. The SDD author  
844 chooses the values; they are not defined in this specification.

845 **3.4 IdentityType**



846  
847 **Figure 5: IdentityType structure.**

848 This complex type provides identity information for the package as a whole, as well as for content  
849 elements, which are portions of the package. Content elements are the *InstallableUnit*, *LocalizationUnit*,  
850 *ConfigurationUnit*, *CompositeUnit* and *CompositeInstallable* elements defined in the deployment  
851 descriptor.

852 **3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary**

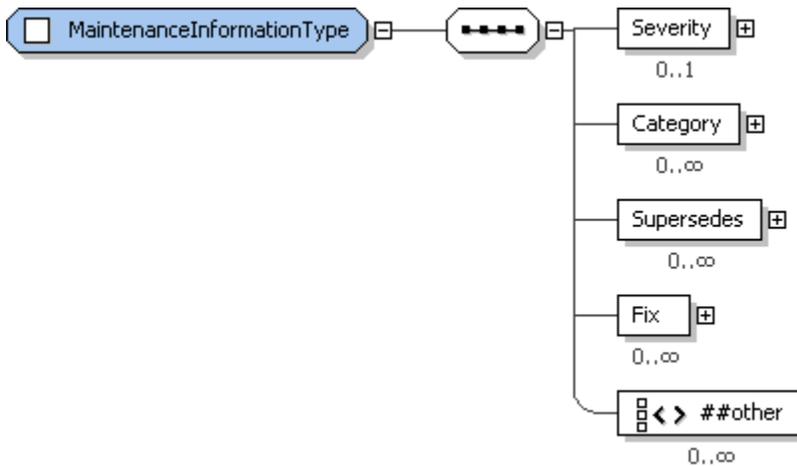
Name	Data Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A verbose description of the package or content element.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A limited description of the package or content element.
Name	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable, translatable, name for the package or content element.
Version	VersionType	0..1	The package or content element version.
MaintenanceInformation	MaintenanceInformationType	0..1	Information about package or content element content used when the package contains maintenance.
BuildInformation	BuildInformationType	0..1	A manufacturer identifier for the build of this package or content element. This property can be extended with additional manufacturer-specific information about the build.

Manufacturer	ManufacturerType	0..1	Information about the manufacturer of the package or content element.
	xsd:any	0..*	
softwareID	xsd:string	0..1	A manufacturer's identification number for the software created or updated by the package or content element.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

### 853 3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes

- 854   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
855 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the package.
- 856    The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 857    See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 858   ▪ **Name:** When the manufacturer of the SDD has a package management system, *Name* in  
859 *PackagelIdentity* should correspond to the name of the package as known in the package  
860 management system. *Name* in a content element's *Identity* should correspond to the name of the unit  
861 of packaging, if it is known in the package management system.
- 862    When the *PackagelIdentity* element is defined, *Name* MUST be defined.
- 863    Software packages that create software often have the same name as the deployed software.  
864    Software packages that update software often have a name that reflects the fact that the package is a  
865 maintenance package, differentiating it from the base deployed software. The author of the software  
866 package that is described by *PackagelIdentity* determines whether the *Name* is the same as or  
867 different from the *Name* of the deployed software.
- 868    See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 869   ▪ **Version:** This is a packaging version. In *PackagelIdentity*, it is the version of the package as a whole.  
870 In content element identities, this is the version of the unit of packaging represented by the content  
871 element. In either case, the SDD author MAY choose to make this version correspond to the version  
872 of a resulting or changed resource, but it should not be confused with resource versions.
- 873    In the case of a base install, version MAY be the same as the top level resulting resource. In the case  
874 of a configuration package, version SHOULD NOT be the same as the top level resulting resource.
- 875    See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- 876   ▪ **MaintenanceInformation:** This is used when the package or content element describes the  
877 deployment of maintenance.
- 878    See the *MaintenanceInformationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.5].
- 879   ▪ **BuildInformation:** In *PackagelIdentity*, this describes the build of the package as a whole. In content  
880 element *Identity*, this describes the build of the artifact(s) and the content element describing the  
881 artifact.
- 882    See the *BuildInformationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.7].
- 883   ▪ **Manufacturer:** See the *ManufacturerType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.8].
- 884   ▪ **softwareID:** The software identified by *softwareID* is the software whose deployment is described by  
885 the SDD. When the manufacturer maintains software identifiers within a sales and distribution  
886 system, the *softwareID* SHOULD correspond to an identifier for the software within that system. If a  
887 format for software identifiers is not pre-existing within the manufacturer's systems, a UUID SHOULD  
888 be used for *softwareID*. When a UUID is used, it MUST be unique within the domain in which the  
889 described software is used.

890 **3.5 MaintenanceInformationType**



891  
892 **Figure 6: MaintenanceInformationType structure.**

893 If the package provides maintenance for deployed software, *MaintenanceInformation* declares information  
894 about the fix or fixes provided. If the package content is a single fix, *MaintenanceInformation* describes  
895 the information about that one fix. If the content is a collection of fixes—for example, a fix pack—  
896 *MaintenanceInformation* describes each of the fixes provided by the fix pack.

897 **3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary**

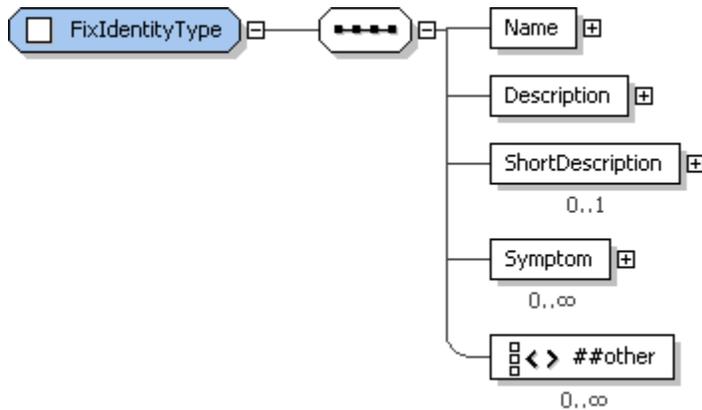
Name	Data Type	*	Description
Severity	DisplayTextType	0..1	Severity of the maintenance content.
Category	DisplayTextType	0..*	Category of the maintenance content.
Supersedes	MaintenanceInformationType	0..*	A previously released fix that is superseded by application of this maintenance.
Fix	FixIdentityType	0..*	An included fix.
	xsd:any	0..*	

898 **3.5.2 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes**

- 899 ▪ **Severity:** This value SHOULD correspond to a severity value used within the SDD provider’s support  
900 system. It serves as a hint to the deployer about the urgency of applying the described maintenance.  
901 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 902 ▪ **Category:** These values SHOULD correspond to maintenance categories within the SDD provider’s  
903 support system.  
904 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 905 ▪ **Supersedes:** Superseded fixes are ones that fix a problem also fixed by the superseding  
906 maintenance package or content element and therefore need not be applied.  
907 This element does not indicate whether or not the superseded fix needs to be removed. To indicate  
908 that the previous fix must be removed before the superseding maintenance can be applied  
909 successfully; the SDD author can create a requirement stating that the fix must not be present.  
910 Superseded fixes MAY include all the information defined in *MaintenanceInformationType*. At a  
911 minimum, a superseded fix MUST include at least one *Fix* element with the name of the superseded  
912 fix defined.
- 913 ▪ **Fix:** *Fix* elements provide information about individual fixes provided by the maintenance content.

914 See the *FixIdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.6].

### 915 3.6 FixIdentityType



916  
917 **Figure 7: FixIdentityType structure.**

918 Elements of *FixIdentityType* describe fixes that will be applied when the package is deployed or the  
919 content element is applied.

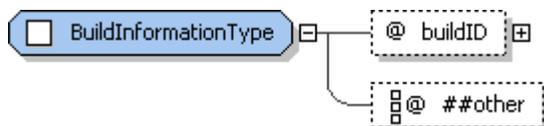
#### 920 3.6.1 FixIdentityType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Name	xsd:NMTOKEN	1	A name for the fix which is, at a minimum, unique within the scope of the resource fixed.
Description	DisplayTextType	1	A complete description of the fix.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	An abbreviated description of the fix.
Symptom	DisplayTextType	0..*	A symptom of the problem fixed.
	xsd:any	0..*	

#### 921 3.6.2 FixIdentityType Property Usage Notes

- 922 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* element MUST provide a value that uniquely identifies a fix within a scope defined  
923 by the manufacturer. This is a name provided by the manufacturer that corresponds to the fix name  
924 as understood in the deployment environment.
- 925 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
926 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the fix.  
927 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
928 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 929 ▪ **Symptom:** Symptom strings can be used to correlate a fix with one or more experienced problems.  
930 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

### 931 3.7 BuildInformationType



932  
933 **Figure 8: BuildInformationType structure.**

934 *BuildInformationType* provides the type definition for the *BuildInformation* element in package and content  
 935 element identity. *BuildInformation* provides information about the creation of the package and its parts.

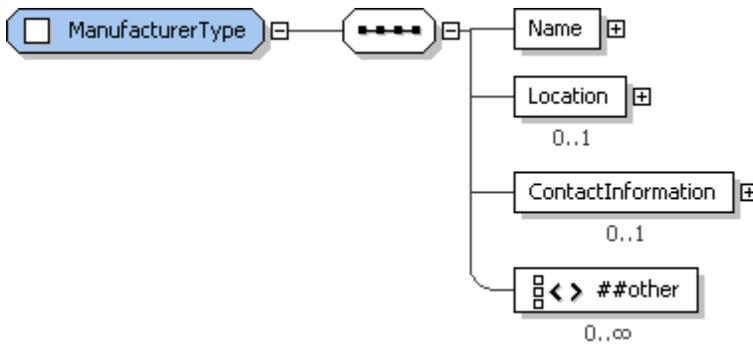
936 **3.7.1 BuildInformationType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
buildID	xsd:token	1	Identifies the build of the package or package element.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

937 **3.7.2 BuildInformationType Property Usage Notes**

- 938 ▪ **buildID:** The *buildID* attribute is an identifier provided by the manufacturer and meaningful to  
 939 developers that can be used to identify a build of the defining element. This information MUST  
 940 correspond with information known in the manufacturer’s build environment. It is traditionally used  
 941 during problem determination to allow maintainers of the software to determine the specifics of  
 942 package creation. Inclusion of *buildID* in the SDD allows the end user to provide this information to  
 943 package maintainers, enabling them to correlate the deployed software with a particular known build  
 944 of the software.

945 **3.8 ManufacturerType**



946  
 947 **Figure 9: ManufacturerType structure.**

948 The SDD author can include information about the package manufacturer that includes name, location  
 949 and contact information such as the address of the manufacturer’s Web site or telephone number.

950 **3.8.1 ManufacturerType Property Summary**

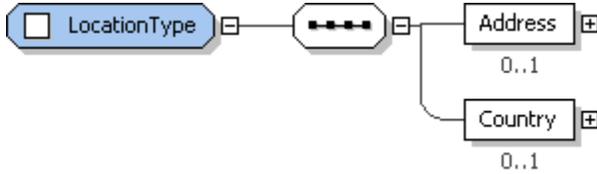
Name	Type	*	Description
Name	DisplayTextType	1	A translatable name for the manufacturer.
Location	LocationType	0..1	The address and country of the manufacturer.
ContactInformation	DisplayTextType	0..1	Contact information for the manufacturer.
	xsd:any	0..*	

951 **3.8.2 ManufacturerType Property Usage Notes**

- 952 ▪ **Name:** The value provided in the *Name* element MUST be an identifiable name of the manufacturer  
 953 of the SDD.  
 954 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].  
 955 ▪ **Location:** See the *LocationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.9].

- 956 ▪ **ContactInformation:** This element MAY provide additional contact information for the named  
957 manufacturer, such as a support Web site address or a technical support telephone number.  
958 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

### 959 3.9 LocationType



960  
961 **Figure 10: LocationType structure.**

962 *LocationType* supports inclusion of the manufacturer’s address and country in package and content  
963 element identity.

#### 964 3.9.1 LocationType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Address	DisplayTextType	0..1	The manufacturer’s address.
Country	DisplayTextType	0..1	The manufacturer’s country.

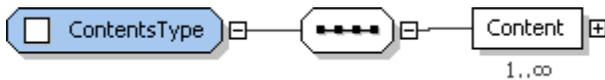
#### 965 3.9.2 LocationType Property Usage Notes

- 966 ▪ **Address:** This is the mailing address or the physical address.  
967 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 968 ▪ **Country:** Recording the manufacturer’s country in the SDD provides information that may be of  
969 interest in relation to import and export of software.  
970 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

### 971 3.10 VersionType

972 *VersionType* provides the type definition for version elements in the package descriptor and deployment  
973 descriptor. It is a simple type that is based on *xsd:string* with no further restrictions. This means that  
974 versions in the SDD are represented simply as strings. Because resource versions exist in the  
975 deployment environment, their formats and semantics vary widely. For this reason, the format and  
976 semantics of versions are not defined by this specification.

### 977 3.11 ContentsType



978  
979 **Figure 11: Contents structure.**

980 *ContentsType* is used in *PackageDescriptor* to provide a list of one or more *Content* elements.

#### 981 3.11.1 ContentsType Property Summary

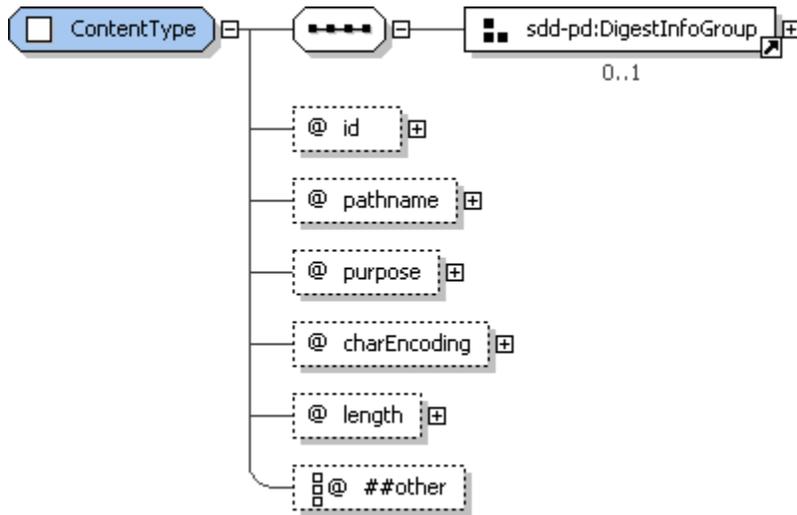
Name	Type	*	Description
Content	ContentType	1..*	Describes the physical contents of the software package.

982 **3.11.2 ContentsType Property Usage Notes**

- 983 ▪ **Content:** A *PackageDescriptor* MUST contain a *Contents* element that is a list of one or more
- 984 *Content* elements.

985 See the *ContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.12].

986 **3.12 ContentType**



987  
988 **Figure 12: ContentType structure.**

989 A software package includes one or more content files. *ContentType* defines the properties of a content  
 990 file included in the package descriptor. Content defined in the package descriptor as part of the software  
 991 package does not need to be physically co-located. Each element MUST be in a location that can be  
 992 identified by a URI. The *pathname* attribute of each content file defines a URI for accessing the file.  
 993 Characteristics of the content files—such as their length, purpose and character encoding—MAY be  
 994 declared in the package descriptor.

995 **3.12.1 ContentType Property Summary**

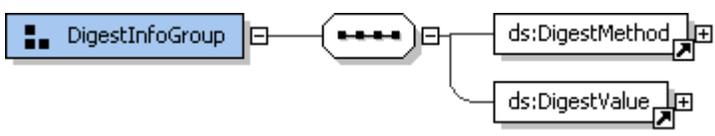
Name	Data Type	*	Description
ds:DigestMethod	ds:DigestMethodType	0..1	Specifies the digest method applied to the file.
ds:DigestValue	ds:DigestValueType	0..1	Specifies the Base64-encoded value of the digest of the file.
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier used in deployment descriptors to refer to the file definition in the associated package descriptor.
pathname	xsd:anyURI	1	The absolute or relative path of the content file including the file name.
purpose	ContentPurposeType	0..1	Associates a purpose classification with a file. **default value="content"
charEncoding	xsd:string	0..1	Specifies the character encoding of the contents of the file.
length	xsd:nonNegativeInteger	0..1	Specifies the size of the file in bytes.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

996 **3.12.2 ContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 997 ▪ **ds:DigestMethod, ds:DigestValue:** These values MAY be used to assist with file verification.

- 998 See the *DigestInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.13].
- 999 ▪ **id**: This is the identifier for the content that is used as a reference in artifact elements in the  
1000 deployment descriptor.
- 1001 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
1002 log and trace messages.
- 1003 ▪ **pathname**: *pathname* is used to access content in the package. The path of the file MUST be a URI  
1004 that specifies an absolute path or a path relative to the location of the package descriptor. It MUST  
1005 include the file name.
- 1006 ▪ **purpose**: The *purpose* attribute enables the *PackageDescriptor* author to associate a classification  
1007 with a file. The classification identifies the file as having a specific purpose. *ContentPurposeType*  
1008 defines a union of *SDDContentPurposeType* with *xsd:NCName*. The *purpose* value MAY be chosen  
1009 from one of the following values enumerated in *SDDContentPurposeType* or be a valid NCName  
1010 value provided by the SDD author. If *purpose* is not specified, the default value is *content*.  
1011 Enumerated values for *purpose* are:
- 1012 • **readMe**: A file with information about the package. An implementation may choose to display  
1013 this to a user as part of the deployment process.
  - 1014 • **endUserLicenseAgreement**: A file containing an end user license agreement. An  
1015 implementation may choose to display this to a user as part of the deployment process.
  - 1016 • **responseFile**: A file that contains input values for an operation.
  - 1017 • **deploymentDescriptor**: An XML file containing the *DeploymentDescriptor* definition  
1018 associated with the *PackageDescriptor*. A valid *PackageDescriptor* MUST have exactly one  
1019 *Content* element with a *purpose* value of *deploymentDescriptor*.
  - 1020 • **packageDescriptor**: Supports aggregation of packages. This is used to reference a  
1021 *packageDescriptor* of an aggregated package.
  - 1022 • **descriptorLanguageBundle**: A file containing translations of text defined directly in the  
1023 package descriptor or its associated deployment descriptor.
  - 1024 • **content**: A file used during deployment of solution content. This is the default value for  
1025 purpose.
- 1026 ▪ **charEncoding**: This attribute need only be used for files that a run-time is required to render.  
1027 Common *charEncoding* values include “ASCII”, “UTF-8”, “UTF-16” and “Shift\_JIS”. For an extensive  
1028 list of character encodings, see [IANA-CHARSET].
- 1029 ▪ **length**: The file length MAY be used for simple file verification.

1030 **3.13 DigestInfoGroup**



1031 **Figure 13: DigestInfoGroup structure.**

1032 When digest information is used to sign a content file, both the digest method and the digest value MUST  
1033 be provided.  
1034

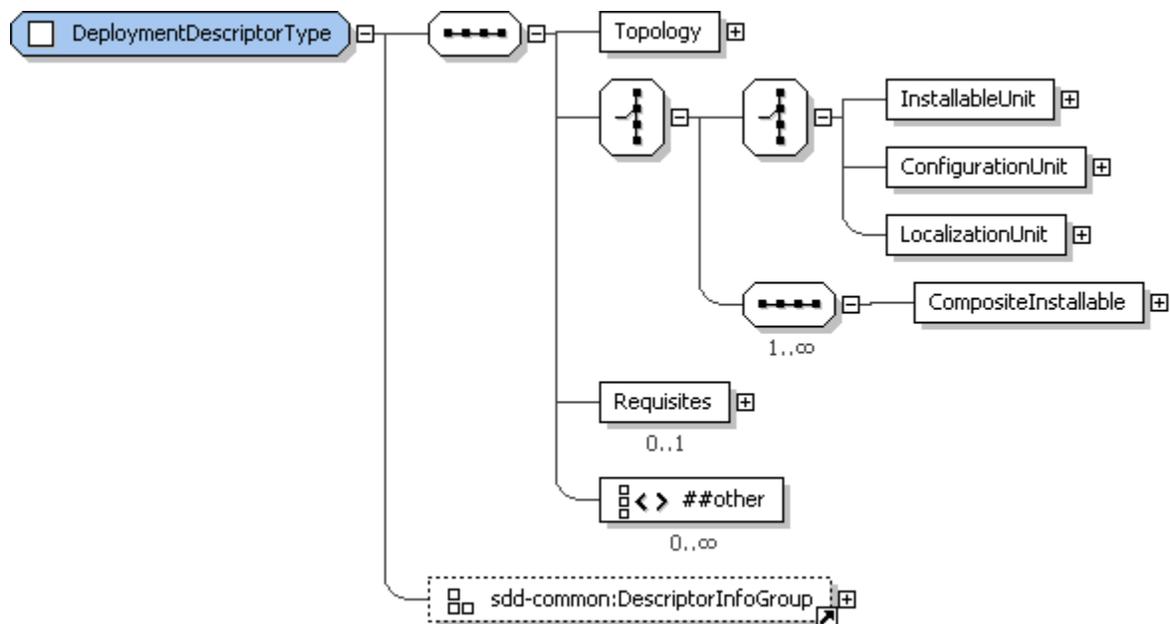
1035 **3.13.1 DigestInfoGroup Property Usage Notes**

- 1036 ▪ **ds:DigestMethod, ds:DigestValue**: *ds:digestMethod* and *ds:digestValue* MAY be used to digitally  
1037 sign individual files. If files are signed, the digest value MUST be calculated over the whole of each  
1038 file.  
1039 See [XMLDSIG-CORE] for details on the usage of *ds:DigestMethod* and *ds:DigestValue*.

## 1040 4 Deployment Descriptor

1041 A solution package contains a deployment descriptor in addition to a package descriptor. The deployment  
1042 descriptor describes the topology, selectability, inputs, requirements and conditions of the deployment.  
1043 The deployment descriptor is associated with a package descriptor and refers to content files in that  
1044 package descriptor.

### 1045 4.1 DeploymentDescriptor



1046  
1047 **Figure 14: DeploymentDescriptor structure.**

1048 *DeploymentDescriptor* is the top level element of a deployment descriptor. The *DeploymentDescriptor*  
1049 defines the information required to support deployment of the package contents. This includes the  
1050 *Topology*, which declares all of the resources that may participate in deployment. It also includes one  
1051 atomic content element or one or more *CompositeInstallable* content elements. Atomic content elements  
1052 are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit*, or *LocalizationUnit*. Atomic content elements define artifacts that  
1053 can be processed to deploy software resources. They are atomic because they cannot aggregate other  
1054 content elements. A *CompositeInstallable* element is the root of a content element hierarchy that defines  
1055 content that performs the one deployment operation supported by the *CompositeInstallable*. A  
1056 *CompositeInstallable* can define base, selectable and localization content as well as the aggregation of  
1057 other content elements.

## 4.1.1 DeploymentDescriptor Property Summary

Name	Data Type	*	Description
Topology	TopologyType	1	Defines resources that are required, created or modified by deployment.
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0..1	Defines content that installs, updates and/or uninstalls resources. When an InstallableUnit is defined, no ConfigurationUnit, LocalizationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0..1	Defines content that configures resources. When a ConfigurationUnit is defined, no InstallableUnit, LocalizationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.
LocalizationUnit	LocalizationUnitType	0..1	Defines content that installs, updates and/or uninstalls translated materials. When a LocalizationUnit is defined, no InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.
CompositeInstallable	CompositeInstallableType	0..*	Defines a hierarchy of base, selectable and/or localization content used to perform one deployment lifecycle operation. When one or more CompositeInstallable elements are defined, no InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit or LocalizationUnit elements can be defined.
Requisites	RequisitesType	0..1	A list of references to SDD packages that can optionally be deployed to satisfy deployment requirements of the defining SDD.
	xsd:any	0..*	
schemaVersion	xsd:string	1	The descriptor complies with this version of the Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification. **fixed value="1.0"
descriptorID	UUIDType	1	Identifier of the deployment descriptor for a particular set of deployable content.
lastModified	xsd:dateTime	1	The time the descriptor was last modified.
descriptorLanguageBundle	xsd:token	0..1	The root name of language bundle files containing translations for display text elements in the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

## 4.1.2 DeploymentDescriptor Property Usage Notes

- 1060
- 1061
- 1062
- 1063
- 1064
- 1065
- **Topology:** *Topology* provides a logical view of all resources that may participate in any particular deployment. A resource can participate by being required, created or modified by the deployment. A required resource MAY also play the role of target resource, meaning that it can process artifacts to perform some portion of the deployment. The resources that actually participate in a particular deployment are determined by the user inputs, selections and resource bindings provided during that deployment.

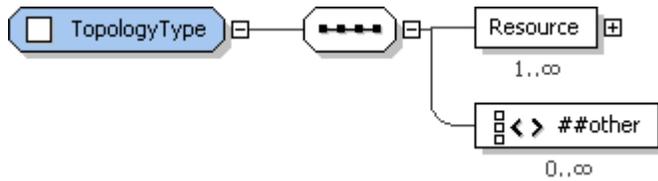
1066 See the *TopologyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.1].

- 1067   ▪ **InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, LocalizationUnit, CompositeInstallable:** A simple software  
1068 deployment that uses a single artifact for each supported deployment operation MAY be described  
1069 using an SDD that defines a single atomic content element—*InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* or  
1070 *LocalizationUnit*.
- 1071       A software deployment that requires multiple artifacts, aggregates other deployment packages or has  
1072 selectable content MAY be described using an SDD that defines one or more *CompositeInstallable*  
1073 elements. Each *CompositeInstallable* MUST describe one deployment lifecycle operation for the  
1074 package.
- 1075       See the respective sections (*InstallableUnitType* [4.3.1], *ConfigurationUnitType* [4.3.2],  
1076 *LocalizationUnitType* [4.13.2] and *CompositeInstallableType* [4.9.1]) for structure and additional  
1077 usage details.
- 1078   ▪ **Requisites:** When the package author chooses to provide deployment packages for required  
1079 software, those packages are described by *Requisite* elements in *Requisites*.
- 1080       Including requisite packages in the SDD package MAY provide a convenient way for the deployer to  
1081 satisfy one or more SDD requirements.
- 1082       See the *RequisitesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.5].
- 1083   ▪ **schemaVersion, descriptorID, lastModified, descriptorLanguageBundle:** These attributes can be  
1084 useful to tooling that manages, creates or modifies deployment descriptors and to tooling and  
1085 deployment software that displays information from the deployment descriptor to humans.
- 1086       See the *DescriptorInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.2].

## 1087 4.2 Topology

- 1088 The SDD's topology describes all the resources that may be required, created or modified when any of  
1089 the deployment operations supported by the SDD are performed.
- 1090 Primary identifying characteristics of the resources can be defined in topology. Constraints beyond these  
1091 primary characteristics are not defined in topology; they are defined in content elements that reference  
1092 the resource definitions in topology.
- 1093 The topology includes identification of *hosts-hostedBy* relationships between resources. When both  
1094 resources in that relationship participate in a particular deployment, the relationship is considered a  
1095 requirement for that deployment.
- 1096 It is possible that only a subset of the resources described in topology will play a role in a particular  
1097 deployment. This is determined by the selection of content elements for the particular deployment. The  
1098 resources that are required, created or modified by the content elements in scope for the deployment are  
1099 the ones that will participate in the deployment and so are associated with resources in the deployment  
1100 environment.
- 1101 At deployment time, definitions of the resources that participate in that particular deployment are  
1102 associated with actual resource instances in the deployment environment. The mechanisms for  
1103 associating resource definitions with resource instances are not described by the SDD. The SDD  
1104 metadata describes the characteristics of the participating resources. Whether associations of resource  
1105 instances with matching characteristics are made by user choice or entirely by software does not affect  
1106 the success of the deployment. Resource characteristics used when making this association include  
1107 those defined in topology plus all those defined in constraints on the resource in the content elements that  
1108 are in scope for the particular deployment.
- 1109 Some topologies are variable. That is, a particular set of logical resources of the same type in the  
1110 topology might be associated with different physical resource instances or the same physical resource  
1111 during deployment. In this case, a separate logical resource definition is created in topology for each  
1112 possible physical resource instance. Uniqueness constraints can then be used to describe the conditions  
1113 under which the separate resources can be associated with a single resource.
- 1114 All resource definitions in the SDD are in topology. All other descriptions of resources in the SDD are  
1115 references to the resource definitions in the topology.

1116 **4.2.1 TopologyType**



1117  
1118 **Figure 15: TopologyType structure.**

1119 The *Topology* element defines one or more hierarchies of resource specifications that describe the  
 1120 resources that MAY play a role in the deployment of the contents of the solution package. These resource  
 1121 specifications do not identify specific resource instances in a specific deployment environment. Instead,  
 1122 they are logical specifications of resources that can be associated with specific resource instances in the  
 1123 deployment environment for a particular deployment based on the described resource identity  
 1124 characteristics. These resources have a role in a particular solution deployment only when they are  
 1125 required, created or modified by a content element, or referred to by a variable, in that particular solution  
 1126 deployment.

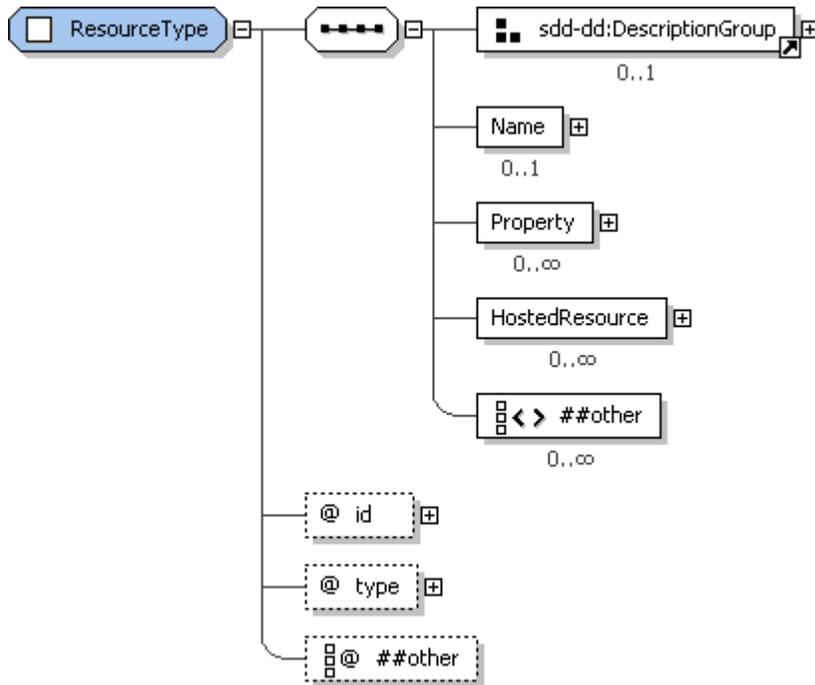
1127 **4.2.1.1 TopologyType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Resource	ResourceType	1..*	The root of a tree of resources that play a role in the solution.
	xsd:any	0..*	

1128 **4.2.1.2 TopologyType Property Usage Notes**

- 1129 ▪ **Resource:** The SDD author’s decision to model a resource in the deployment environment as a  
 1130 resource in the SDD depends on the need to know about that resource when planning for  
 1131 deployment, aggregating, deploying and managing the resource lifecycle using the SDD. All  
 1132 resources required by the solution SHOULD be included. For all *Requirements* declared in the SDD,  
 1133 resources MUST be specified. Resources referred to by *ResultingResource* or *ResultingChange*  
 1134 elements MUST also be included. The more complete the SDD is, the more useful it will be in guiding  
 1135 successful deployment.  
 1136 See the *ResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.2].

1137 **4.2.2 ResourceType**



1138  
1139 **Figure 16: ResourceType structure.**

1140 Elements of *ResourceType*—both the top level *Resource* elements and the *HostedResource* elements  
1141 within the resource hierarchy—make up the topology of an SDD. Each *Resource* element declares, at a  
1142 minimum, the type of the resource. Values for resource type are not defined by this specification. A core  
1143 assumption of this specification is that an understanding of specific resource types and resource  
1144 characteristics are shared by the deployment descriptor author and the deployment software. Therefore, if  
1145 the deployment descriptor author declares a new resource type, then deployment software operating on  
1146 the SDD needs to understand how to handle that resource type.

1147 In addition to defining type, the resource elements MAY specify a name and other identity properties that  
1148 can be used to identify instances of the resource in the deployment environment. The resource identity  
1149 elements, *Name* and *Property*, are optional and MAY be specified in content elements rather than in  
1150 topology. Identity properties used in the resource specification in topology MUST be those that do not  
1151 change during deployment, even when the resource is updated. Because resource versions can often  
1152 change during an update, there is no version element in resource specifications in *Topology*. Values can  
1153 be defined for resource name and resource properties that help to identify the resource. These represent  
1154 the basic identity of the resource and are true for all uses of the resource in the solution.

1155 *ResourceType* provides the type definition for the *Resource* and *HostedResource* elements defined in  
1156 *Topology*. All resources MAY nest resource definitions for resources that they host. To host a resource  
1157 means to provide the execution environment for that resource.

1158 For example, an operating system provides the execution environment for software, and a  
1159 database engine provides the execution environment for a database table. The operating system  
1160 hosts the software and the database engine hosts the database table.

1161 Each resource in these hierarchies may play a role in solution deployment.

1162 Content elements determine a resource’s participation and role(s) in a particular solution deployment.  
1163 Content elements can refer to resources in *Topology* in several ways. A resource can be identified via  
1164 `xsd:IDREF`:

- 1165     ▪ as the target of the content element’s artifacts. A target resource is a resource that is capable of  
1166         processing a particular artifact. A target resource is often, but not always, the host of the  
1167         resources created by the artifacts it processes.

1168 For example, an operating system may be the target of an artifact that is a zip file. When the  
 1169 files are unzipped, the file system resource is the host of those files.

1170 See the *targetResourceRef* attribute in the *InstallableUnitType* [4.3.1], *ConfigurationUnitType*  
 1171 [4.3.2] and *LocalizationUnitType* [4.13.2] sections.

- 1172 ▪ as the required base for an update applied by the artifact referenced by the content element.  
 1173 See the *RequiredBaseType* section [4.7.8].
- 1174 ▪ as the resource that will be created by deploying the artifact referenced by the content element.  
 1175 See the *ResultingResourceType* section [4.8.1].
- 1176 ▪ as the resource that will be changed by deploying the artifact referenced by the content element.  
 1177 See the *ResultingChangeType* section [4.8.2].
- 1178 ▪ as the localization base for translated materials. The localization base is the resource that is  
 1179 localized by deploying the translated materials.  
 1180 See the *LocalizationBase* element in the *LocalizationUnitType* section [4.13.2].
- 1181 ▪ as a required resource named in the content element's *Requirements*.  
 1182 See the *RequirementsType* section [4.7.1].
- 1183 ▪ to establish a variable value from a resource property.  
 1184 See the *ResourcePropertyType* section [4.6.12].

1185 One resource MAY be referred to by any number of content elements and can be identified to play any or  
 1186 all of the roles just listed. When a content element participates in a particular solution deployment, the  
 1187 resources it references participate in that solution deployment and are associated with resource instances  
 1188 in the deployment environment.

1189 **4.2.2.1 ResourceType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the resource and its role in the solution described by the SDD.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the resource and its role.
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	The name of the resource as known in the deployment environment.
Property	PropertyType	0..*	An identity property of the resource.
HostedResource	ResourceType	0..*	A resource that participates in the solution and that is hosted by the defining resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier of the resource scoped to the descriptor.
type	ResourceTypeNameType	1	A well-known resource type.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1190 **4.2.2.2 ResourceType Property Usage Notes**

- 1191 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** If used, these elements MUST provide a human-readable  
 1192 description of the resource.

1193 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

1194 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].

1195   ▪ **Name:** The resource name is an identifying characteristic of the resource that correlates with a name  
1196   for the resource in the deployment environment.

1197   The type of the *Name* element, *VariableExpressionType*, allows the resource name to be expressed  
1198   as a simple string or in terms of a user input parameter or other variable.

1199       An example of a good use of a variable expression in *Resource.Name* is to make sure that the  
1200       installation directory is hosted on a file system that has sufficient space available for deployment.  
1201       In this example, the file system resource element would define a *HostedResource* element for the  
1202       directory. The *Name* of the directory would be expressed as a variable expression that refers to a  
1203       user input parameter for installation location. Content elements that use the installation directory  
1204       would express a requirement on the directory and on the file system with the additional constraint  
1205       that the file system have a certain amount of available space (to satisfy the consumption  
1206       constraints). The fact that both resources are required and that they are defined with a *hosts-*  
1207       *hostedBy* relationship in *Topology*, means that the directory that is used must be the installation  
1208       directory and it must be hosted by a file system that meets the consumption constraint for  
1209       available space.

1210   Only the *Variable* elements defined in a top level content element can be used to define a resource  
1211   *Name*, because these are the only variables visible within *Topology*.

1212   If the name of a resource is changed during deployment, for example, during an update, then the  
1213   resource name SHOULD NOT be included in the resource specification. Instead, the pre-update  
1214   resource name SHOULD be specified in the *RequiredBase* element of the installable unit that  
1215   provides the update, and the post-update name SHOULD be specified in the *ResultingResource*  
1216   element of the same installable unit.

1217   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

1218   ▪ **Property:** *Property* elements SHOULD be used when *Name* alone is not sufficient to identify the  
1219   resource. The property used represents an identifying characteristic of a resource.

1220   See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].

1221   ▪ **HostedResource:** A *Resource* MAY define *HostedResource* elements. Each *HostedResource*  
1222   element is an instance of *ResourceType*. When both the host and the hosted resource participate in a  
1223   particular solution deployment, the associated resource instances selected for use during that  
1224   deployment must have a *hosts* relationship.

1225       For example, a Web application declared to be hosted on a Web server must be hosted on the  
1226       instance of the Web server that is selected for use during the deployment.

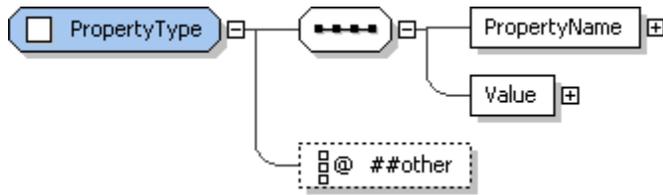
1227   If only the host resource is identified by the *DeploymentDescriptor's* content elements as participating  
1228   in the solution, then there is no assumption that the hosted resource exists.

1229   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute uniquely identifies the resource element within the *DeploymentDescriptor*. This *id*  
1230   value is used by other elements in the *DeploymentDescriptor* to refer to this resource. This value is  
1231   created by the descriptor author.

1232   The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
1233   log and trace messages.

1234   ▪ **type:** The *type* attribute defines the class of resource. The value of *type* correlates with the resource  
1235   type known for the resource in the deployment environment. *ResourceTypeNameType* restricts *type*  
1236   to valid `xsd:QNames`. The values for *type* are not defined by this specification. Creators of  
1237   *DeploymentDescriptors* rely on knowledge of resource types that are understood by supporting  
1238   infrastructure in the target environment. To honor the descriptor author's intent, the deploying  
1239   infrastructure must be able to discover the existence of resources of the types defined in the SDD; the  
1240   values of the resource's properties; and the existence and type of resource relationships. The  
1241   deploying infrastructure also needs to understand how to use the artifact types associated with the  
1242   resource type to create, modify and delete the resource.

1243 **4.2.3 PropertyType**



1244  
1245 **Figure 17: PropertyType structure.**

1246 *PropertyType* provides the type definition for elements used to declare an identity property of a resource,  
1247 namely, the *Property* elements of *Resource* and *HostedResource* in *Topology*. It also provides the type  
1248 definition for *Property* elements in *Relationship* and *RelationshipConstraint*.

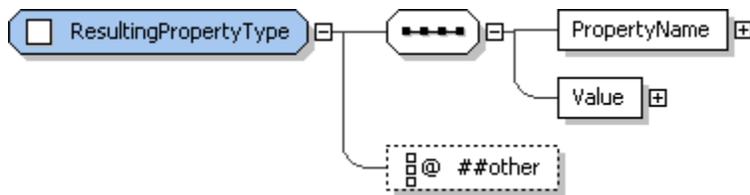
1249 **4.2.3.1 PropertyType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	The property name.
Value	VariableExpressionType	1	The property value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1250 **4.2.3.2 PropertyType Property Usage Notes**

- 1251 ▪ **PropertyName:** The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide additional identification for the resource  
1252 in the deployment environment.
- 1253 The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide constraints on the configuration of a resource.
- 1254 ▪ **Value:** Evaluation of the *Value* expression provides the value of the property.
- 1255 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

1256 **4.2.4 ResultingPropertyType**



1257  
1258 **Figure 18: ResultingPropertyType structure.**

1259 *ResultingPropertyType* provides the type definition for elements used to declare an identity property of a  
1260 resulting resource or to declare a configuration change to a resource property which results from  
1261 deployment of an artifact.

1262 **4.2.4.1 ResultingPropertyType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
PropertyName	xsd:string	1	The resulting property name.
Value	VariableExpressionType	1	The resulting property value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	Additional attributes of the resulting property.

#### 1263 4.2.4.2 ResultingPropertyType Property Usage Notes

- 1264   ▪ **PropertyName:** The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide additional identification for the resource  
1265   in the deployment environment.
- 1266   The *PropertyName* MAY be used to declare a configuration change to a resource.
- 1267   ▪ **Value:** Evaluation of the *Value* expression provides the value of the resulting property.  
1268   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

### 1269 4.3 Atomic Content Elements

1270 The package descriptor defines package content that includes artifacts whose processing results in  
1271 deployment of the software package. The deployment descriptor defines metadata associated with those  
1272 artifacts. The metadata includes conditions, requirements, results, inputs, outputs and completion actions.  
1273 Metadata throughout the deployment descriptor is associated with package content in the definition of  
1274 atomic content elements. The atomic content elements are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* and  
1275 *LocalizationUnit*. These are the only content elements that define *Artifacts* elements.

1276 *Artifact* elements identify an artifact file or set of files defined in package content whose processing will  
1277 perform all or a portion of the deployment for a particular deployment lifecycle operation. The name of the  
1278 artifact element indicates the operation supported by the artifact. Names of the artifact elements are  
1279 created by prefixing “Artifacts” with the operation name. The artifacts defined for use in the SDD are  
1280 *InstallArtifact*, *UpdateArtifact*, *UndoArtifact*, *UninstallArtifact*, *RepairArtifact* and *ConfigArtifact*.

1281 *Artifact* elements define the inputs and outputs, substitution values and types associated with the artifact  
1282 files. The content element’s target resource, identified by *targetResourceRef*, processes the artifact files  
1283 with the defined inputs to perform deployment operations. Examples of artifact types include zip files, rpm  
1284 files and executable install files. Artifact types are not defined by this specification. The artifact types  
1285 defined in the SDD need to be understood by software that processes the SDD.

1286 There MAY be multiple atomic content elements within a composite installable that describe the  
1287 deployment of multiple resources as part of a single software deployment or there MAY be a single  
1288 atomic content element (singleton) in the deployment descriptor that describes the entirety of a simple  
1289 deployment. When an atomic content element is used in a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly  
1290 one artifact. When an atomic content element is a singleton, it MUST define at least one artifact element  
1291 and MAY define one of each type of artifact element allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact  
1292 element in a singleton atomic content element implies support for the associated operation.

1293       For example, a singleton *ConfigurationUnit* that defines a *ConfigArtifact* associates a configure  
1294       operation with the *ConfigArtifact*. Similarly, an SDD with a singleton *InstallableUnit* that defines an  
1295       *InstallArtifact* and an *UpdateArtifact* associates an *install* operation with the *InstallArtifact* and an  
1296       *update* operation with the *UpdateArtifact*.

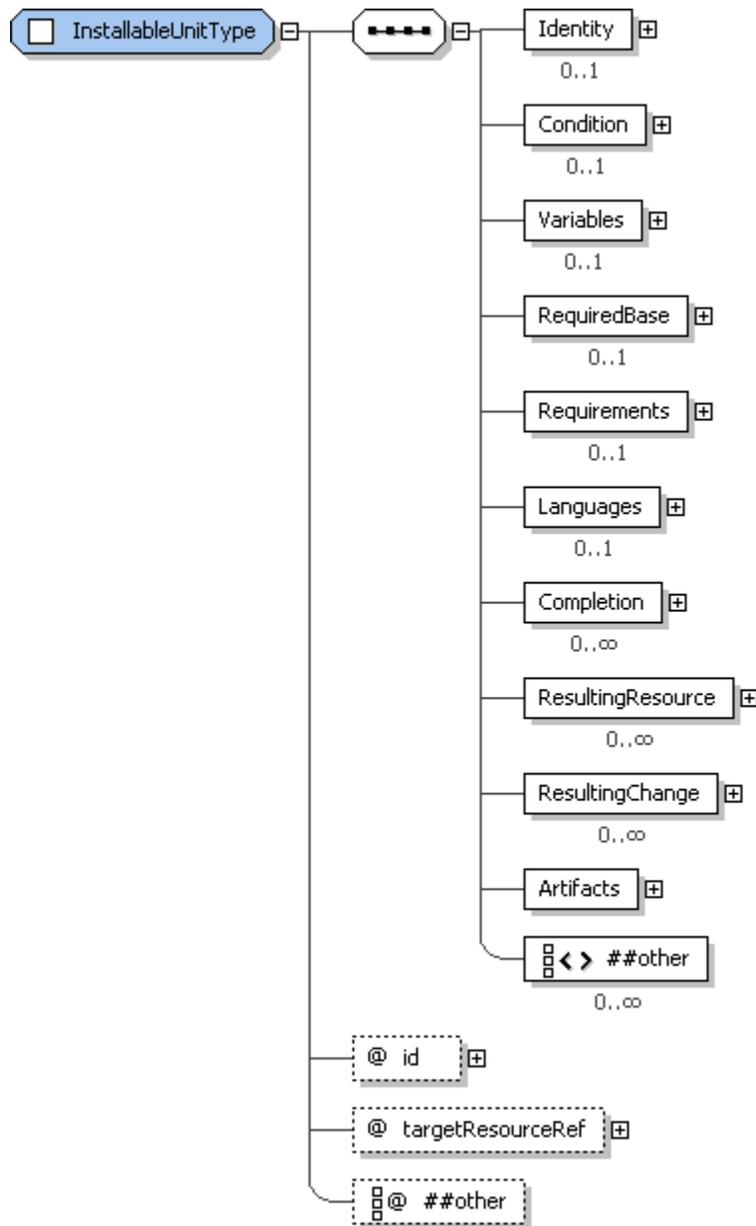
1297 When an atomic content element is defined within a *CompositeInstallable* hierarchy, its one artifact MUST  
1298 support the single top level operation associated with the *CompositeInstallable*. The single artifact defined  
1299 need not be an artifact for the operation defined for the *CompositeInstallable*.

1300       For example, in a *CompositeInstallable* that defines metadata for an *update* operation, there may be  
1301       one *InstallableUnit* that defines an *InstallArtifact* element and another *InstallableUnit* that defines an  
1302       *UpdateArtifact* element. Both of these artifacts are used when performing the overall *update* operation  
1303       defined for the *CompositeInstallable*.

1304

1305

### 4.3.1 InstallableUnitType



1306

1307 **Figure 19: InstallableUnitType structure.**

1308 The *InstallableUnit* element is an atomic content element that defines artifacts that install or update  
 1309 software and defines requirements for applying those artifacts. It may also define artifacts that undo an  
 1310 update or that uninstall or repair existing software.

#### 1311 4.3.1.1 InstallableUnitType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	0..1	Human-understandable identity information about the InstallableUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	0..1	Variables for use within the InstallableUnit's requirements and artifact

			definitions.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	0..1	A resource that will be updated when the InstallableUnit's UpdateArtifact is processed.
Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
Languages	LanguagesType	0..1	Languages supported by the InstallableUnit.
Completion	CompletionType	0..*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0..*	A resource that will be installed or updated by processing the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
ResultingChange	ResultingChangeType	0..*	A resource that will be configured by processing the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
Artifacts	InstallationArtifactsType	1	The set of artifacts associated with the InstallableUnit.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the InstallableUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
targetResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource that can process the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

### 1312 4.3.1.2 InstallableUnitType Property Usage Notes

- 1313
- 1314
- **Identity:** The *InstallableUnit's Identity* element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of the solution as understood by the end user of the solution.

1315 If the *InstallableUnit* defines a resulting resource, the *Identity* of the *InstallableUnit* SHOULD reflect

1316 the identity of the resulting resource.

1317 When the *InstallableUnit* is the only content element in the deployment descriptor, its *Identity* MAY

1318 define values that are the same as the corresponding *PackageIdentity* element values.

1319 This would be useful, for example, in a case where the package is known by the same name as

1320 the resource created by the *InstallableUnit*.

1321 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].

- 1322
- 1323
- **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the *InstallableUnit's* content should be deployed only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

1324 For example, one *InstallableUnit* may be applicable only when the operating system resource is

1325 resolved to a Linux<sup>2</sup> operating system during deployment. The *InstallableUnit* would define a

---

<sup>2</sup> Linux<sup>®</sup> is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

1326            *Condition* stating that the type of the operating system must be Linux for the *InstallableUnit* to be  
1327            considered in scope for a particular deployment.

1328            See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

1329            ▪ **Variables:** An *InstallableUnit's Variables* element defines variables that are used in the definition of  
1330            the *InstallableUnit's* requirements and in parameters and properties passed to the *InstallableUnit's*  
1331            target resource.

1332            When the deployment descriptor defines a single *InstallableUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a  
1333            *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines MAY be referred to by any element under *Topology*.

1334            See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].

1335            ▪ **Languages:** When translated materials are deployed by the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts, the languages  
1336            of the translations are listed in *Languages*.

1337            See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].

1338            ▪ **RequiredBase:** When an *InstallableUnit* can be used to update resources, the *RequiredBase*  
1339            element identifies the resources that can be updated.

1340            See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

1341            ▪ **Requirements:** *Requirements* specified in an *InstallableUnit* identify requirements that must be met  
1342            prior to successful processing of the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts.

1343            See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].

1344            ▪ **Completion:** A *Completion* element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a  
1345            system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the  
1346            artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.

1347            There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.

1348                   For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *install* operation, the *InstallableUnit* must  
1349                   define an *InstallArtifact*.

1350            See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].

1351            ▪ **ResultingResource:** An *InstallableUnit's ResultingResource* element identifies the resources in  
1352            *Topology* that will be installed or updated when the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts are processed.

1353            See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].

1354            ▪ **ResultingChange:** Multiple content elements within the SDD MAY specify the same resource in their  
1355            *ResultingChange* elements. In this case each content element is capable of modifying the  
1356            configuration of that resource.

1357            An example use of the *ResultingChange* element is to understand whether or not one content  
1358            element can satisfy the requirements specified in another content element.

1359            See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].

1360            ▪ **Artifacts:** When the *InstallableUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST  
1361            define at least one artifact element and MAY define one of each type of artifact element allowed for its  
1362            type. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton *InstallableUnit* implies support for the  
1363            associated operation.

1364            When the *InstallableUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one artifact.  
1365            The artifact defined MAY be any artifact allowed in an *InstallableUnit* and it MUST support the single  
1366            top level operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. This does not mean the operation associated  
1367            with the artifact has to be the same as the one defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.

1368                   For example, an update of a resource may be required to support an install of the overall solution,  
1369                   in which case the *InstallableUnit* would define an *UpdateArtifact* to support the top level *install*  
1370                   operation.

1371            See the *InstallationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.4].

1372            ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute is referenced in features to identify an *InstallableUnit* selected by the feature and  
1373            *Dependency* elements to indicate a dependency on processing of the content element.

1374 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 1375 log and trace messages.

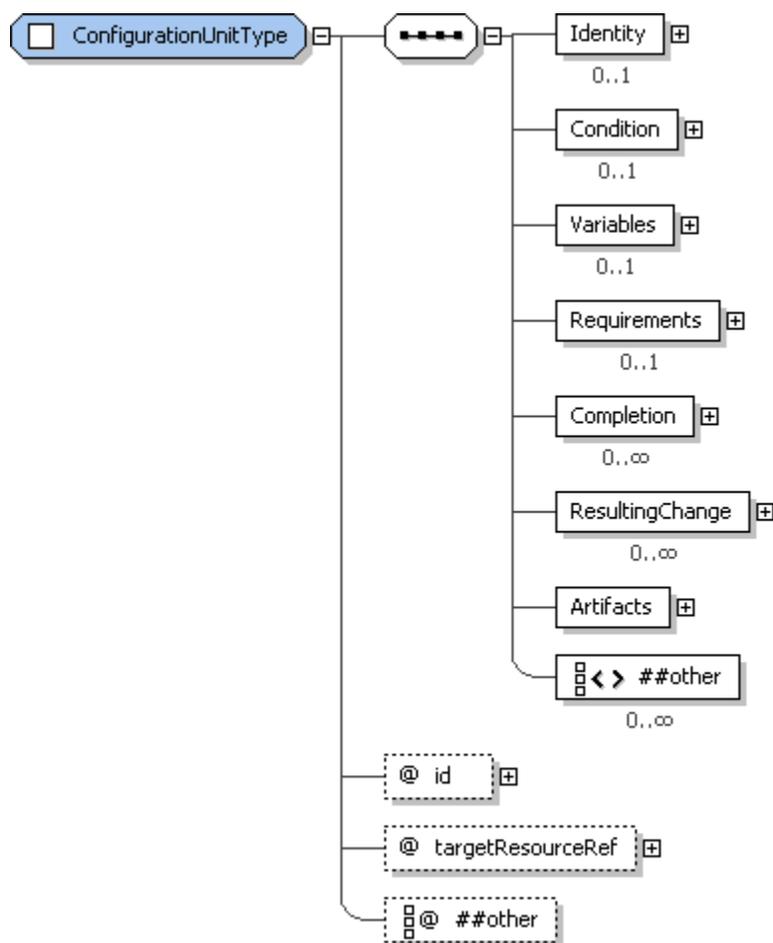
1376 ▪ **targetResourceRef**: The *targetResourceRef* attribute identifies the resource that will process the  
 1377 *InstallableUnit*'s artifacts.

1378 The resources created or modified by artifact processing are frequently, but not necessarily, hosted  
 1379 by the target resource.

1380 This value MUST match an *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

1381 The target may be a resource that has not yet been created. In this case, there is a dependency on  
 1382 the complete installation of the target resource prior to applying the *InstallableUnit*. This dependency  
 1383 MUST be represented in a *Dependency* element within *Requirements* that apply to the  
 1384 *InstallableUnit*.

1385 **4.3.2 ConfigurationUnitType**



1386  
 1387 **Figure 20: ConfigurationUnitType structure.**

1388 The *ConfigurationUnit* element defines artifacts that configure one or more existing resources. It also  
 1389 defines the requirements for applying those artifacts. It MUST NOT install, update, or uninstall resources.

1390 **4.3.2.1 ConfigurationUnitType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	0..1	Human-understandable identity information about the ConfigurationUnit.

Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	0..1	Variables for use within the ConfigurationUnit's requirement and artifact definitions.
Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the ConfigurationUnit's artifacts.
Completion	CompletionType	0..*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
ResultingChange	ResultingChangeType	0..*	A definition of changes made to a resource that is configured by processing the ConfigurationUnit's ConfigArtifact.
Artifacts	ConfigurationArtifactsType	1	The artifact associated with the ConfigurationUnit.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the ConfigurationUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
targetResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource that can process the ConfigurationUnit's artifacts.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 1391 4.3.2.2 ConfigurationUnitType Property Usage Notes

- 1392
- 1393
- 1394
- 1395
- 1396
- 1397
- 1398
- 1399
- 1400
- 1401
- 1402
- 1403
- 1404
- 1405
- 1406
- 1407
- 1408
- 1409
- 1410
- 1411
- 1412
- 1413
- 1414
- 1415
- 1416
- 1417
- **Identity:** The *ConfigurationUnit's Identity* element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of the provided configuration as understood by the end user of the solution. *Identity* has elements that are common with elements in the corresponding *PackageDescriptor's Packagelidentity* element, for example, *Name* and *Version*. The values of these common elements SHOULD be the same as the corresponding *Packagelidentity* element values.  
See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
  - **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the deployment of configuration content is dependent on the existence of certain conditions in the deployment environment.  
For example, a package that has one configuration artifact that creates a database table for one database product and a different artifact that creates a table for a different database product would have two configuration units, each with a condition on the associated database product.  
See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
  - **Variables:** A *ConfigurationUnit's Variables* element defines variables that are used in the definition of requirements and artifact parameters.  
When the deployment descriptor defines a single *ConfigurationUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines MAY be referred to by any element under *Topology*.  
See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
  - **Requirements:** *Requirements* specified in a *ConfigurationUnit* identify requirements that MUST be met prior to successful processing of the *ConfigurationUnit's* artifacts.  
See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
  - **Completion:** A *Completion* element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.  
There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.  
For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *configure* operation, the *ConfigurationUnit* must define a *ConfigArtifact*.

1418 See the *CompletionType* section for the structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].

1419 ▪ **ResultingChange:** Configuration changes made when the configuration artifact is processed  
 1420 SHOULD be declared here. This information may be necessary when the SDD is aggregated into  
 1421 another SDD and the resulting change satisfies a constraint in the aggregation. The information  
 1422 declared here can be compared with resource constraints to determine if application of the  
 1423 *ConfigurationUnit* will satisfy the constraint.

1424 See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].

1425 ▪ **Artifacts:** When the *ConfigurationUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it  
 1426 MUST define at least one artifact element. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton  
 1427 *ConfigurationUnit* implies support for the associated operation.

1428 When the *ConfigurationUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one  
 1429 artifact. The artifact defined MUST be a *ConfigArtifact* and it MUST support the single top level  
 1430 operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.

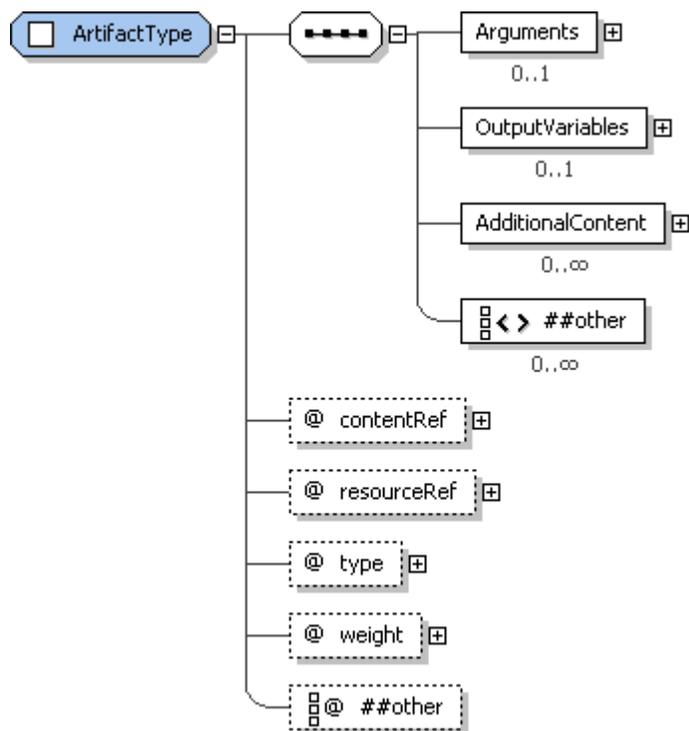
1431 See the *ConfigurationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.5].

1432 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 1433 log and trace messages.

1434 ▪ **targetResourceRef:** The *targetResourceRef* attribute identifies the resource in *Topology* that will  
 1435 process the *ConfigurationUnit's* artifacts to configure the resources identified by the  
 1436 *ConfigurationUnit's* *ResultingChange* definition.

1437 This value MUST match an *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

1438 **4.3.3 ArtifactType**



1439  
 1440 **Figure 21: ArtifactType structure.**

1441 *ArtifactType* elements define the files, arguments and other information required to perform a particular  
 1442 deployment operation. Every artifact that can be defined in a content element is an instance of  
 1443 *ArtifactType*. These are *InstallArtifact*, *UpdateArtifact*, *UndoArtifact*, *UninstallArtifact*, *RepairArtifact* and  
 1444 *ConfigArtifact*.

1445 **4.3.3.1 ArtifactType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Arguments	ArgumentListType	0..1	Arguments used during processing of the artifact.
OutputVariables	OutputVariableListType	0..1	Variables whose values are set during processing of the artifact.
AdditionalContent	AdditionalContentType	0..*	Additional content files that are part of the artifact.
	xsd:any	0..*	
contentRef	xsd:token	0..1	The primary artifact file. Not used if resourceRef is used.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	0..1	The resulting resource representing the artifact file. Not used if contentRef is used.
type	ArtifactTypeNameType	0..1	Type of the primary artifact file.
weight	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	The time required to process this artifact relative to all other artifacts in the SDD.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1446 **4.3.3.2 ArtifactType Property Usage Notes**

- 1447   ▪ **Arguments:** Inputs to the processing of the artifact MUST be specified by defining an *Arguments*
- 1448    element. All required inputs MUST be included in the arguments list. There are no implied arguments.
- 1449       For example, there is no implication that the selected required resource instances will be passed
- 1450       with an *InstallArtifact* on the install operation. If knowledge of those selections is required,
- 1451       instance identifiers should be passed as arguments.
- 1452       When one *Argument* refers to the *OutputVariable* of another artifact, the output value must be
- 1453       available at the time of processing the dependent artifact.
- 1454       For example, an artifact in a content element that is conditioned on the operating system being
- 1455       Linux should not refer to the output of an artifact in a content element conditioned on the
- 1456       operating system being Windows<sup>TM3</sup>.
- 1457       A *Dependency* requirement MUST be defined between the content elements to indicate that the
- 1458       artifact that defines the output variable is a pre-requisite of the content element with the dependent
- 1459       artifact.
- 1460       See the *ArgumentListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.8].
- 1461   ▪ **OutputVariables:** *OutputVariables* are variables whose values are set by artifact processing.
- 1462       *OutputVariables* can also be useful in log and trace messages.
- 1463       See the *OutputVariableListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.10].

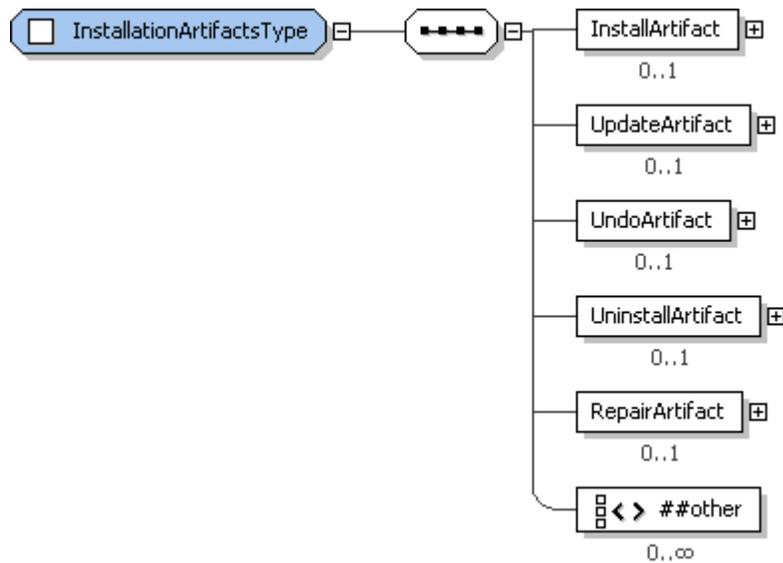
---

<sup>3</sup> Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

- 1464   ▪ **AdditionalContent:** *AdditionalContent* elements MUST be defined when supporting files are needed  
1465   by the artifact for this operation. The content file reference is specified via the *contentRef* attribute of  
1466   *AdditionalContent*.
- 1467   See the *AdditionalContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.12].
- 1468   ▪ **contentRef:** The value MUST be a reference to the *id* of the primary artifact file defined in a *Content*  
1469   element in the package descriptor.
- 1470   Note that it is valid to have no artifact file and drive the operation from arguments alone.
- 1471   When more than one artifact file is needed, *contentRef* points to the primary artifact file and  
1472   *AdditionalContent.contentRef* points to any other files used during application of the content element.
- 1473   When *resourceRef* is defined, *contentRef* MUST NOT be defined.
- 1474   ▪ **resourceRef:** Sometimes, artifact files are created during a deployment rather than being contained  
1475   in the package.
- 1476         For example, some install programs create an uninstall program when the software is deployed.  
1477         The uninstall program is the artifact file that is needed by the *UninstallArtifact*, but is created by,  
1478         but not contained in, the package. In this case, the created artifact file is represented as a  
1479         *ResultingResource*.
- 1480   An *Artifact* element that defines *resourceRef* identifies the resulting resource as its artifact file.
- 1481   When *contentRef* is defined, *resourceRef* MUST NOT be defined.
- 1482   The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 1483   ▪ **type:** The *type* attribute identifies the format of the artifact file or files. When there is no artifact file  
1484   identified, *type* MAY be left undefined. If there is an artifact file or additional files defined, *type* MUST  
1485   be defined.
- 1486   Values for this attribute are not defined by this specification. *ArtifactTypeNameType* restricts *type* to  
1487   valid `xsd:QNames`.
- 1488   ▪ **weight:** Defining weights for all artifacts and referenced packages in an SDD provides useful  
1489   information to software that manages deployment. The weight of the artifact refers to the relative time  
1490   taken to deploy the artifact with respect to other artifacts and referenced packages in this SDD.
- 1491         For example, if the artifact takes three times as long to deploy as another artifact whose weight is  
1492         “2”, then the weight would be “6”. The weight numbers have no meaning in isolation and do not  
1493         describe actual time elapsed. They simply provide an estimate of relative time.

1494

### 4.3.4 InstallationArtifactsType



1495

1496 **Figure 22: InstallationArtifactsType structure.**

1497

1498 *InstallationArtifactsType* provides the type definition for the *Artifacts* element of *InstallableUnit* and  
 1499 *LocalizationUnit*. At least one *Artifact* element MUST be defined. Within a *CompositeInstallable* definition,  
 exactly one *Artifact* element MUST be defined.

1500

#### 4.3.4.1 InstallationArtifactsType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
InstallArtifact	ArtifactType	0..1	Artifact for install operation.
UpdateArtifact	ArtifactType	0..1	Artifact for update operation.
UndoArtifact	ArtifactType	0..1	Artifact for undo operation.
UninstallArtifact	ArtifactType	0..1	Artifact for uninstall operation.
RepairArtifact	ArtifactType	0..1	Artifact for repair operation.
	xsd:any	0..*	

1501

#### 4.3.4.2 InstallationArtifactsType Property Usage Notes

1502

- **InstallArtifact:** The *InstallArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to perform an install using the named artifact files. The *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange* elements describe the characteristics of the new or modified resource(s).

1505

See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

1506

- **UpdateArtifact:** The *UpdateArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to perform an update using the named artifact files. The *RequiredBase* element defines the resource(s) that can be updated. The *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange* elements describe the updated characteristics of the resource(s).

1510

See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

1511

- **UndoArtifact:** The *UndoArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to undo an update. This undo will put the resource back to a previous level.

1512

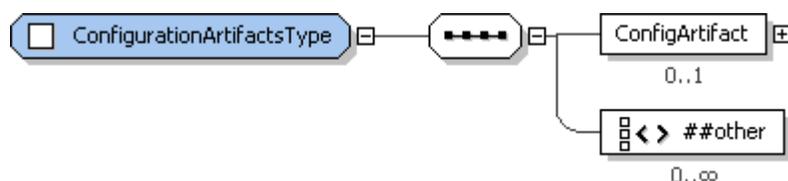
The update that can be undone is described in the *RequiredBase* element. The *ResultingResource* definition can be used to describe the state of the resource(s) after the undo completes.

1513

1514

- 1515 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- 1516 **UninstallArtifact:** The *UninstallArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable  
1517 the target resource to perform an uninstall.
- 1518 If an *InstallArtifact* is defined in the same *InstallableUnit*, the *ResultingResource* element defines the  
1519 resource(s) that will be uninstalled.
- 1520 When an *UninstallArtifact* is the only artifact defined for an *InstallableUnit*, the *RequiredBase* MUST  
1521 be defined to declare the resource(s) that will be uninstalled. The *ResultingResource* element MUST  
1522 be left blank because the result of the uninstall is that the resource(s) are removed.
- 1523 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- 1524 **RepairArtifact:** The *RepairArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the  
1525 target resource to repair an installation.
- 1526 If an *InstallArtifact* is defined in the same *InstallableUnit*, the *ResultingResource* element defines the  
1527 resource(s) that will be repaired.
- 1528 When a *RepairArtifact* is the only artifact defined for an *InstallableUnit*, the *RequiredBase* MUST be  
1529 defined to declare the resource(s) that will be repaired.
- 1530 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

### 1531 4.3.5 ConfigurationArtifactsType



1532  
1533 **Figure 23: ConfigurationArtifactsType structure.**

1534 *ConfigurationArtifactsType* provides the type definition for the *Artifacts* element of *ConfigurationUnit*.

#### 1535 4.3.5.1 ConfigurationArtifactsType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
ConfigArtifact	ArtifactType	0..1	Artifact for configure operation.
	xsd:any	0..*	

#### 1536 4.3.5.2 ConfigurationArtifactsType Property Usage Notes

- 1537 **ConfigArtifact:** The *ConfigArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to allow the  
1538 target resource to configure the resources identified in the content element's *ResultingChange*  
1539 elements.
- 1540 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

### 1541 4.3.6 OperationListType

1542 This simple type extends the `xsd:list` type as defined in [XSD], and adds the restriction that each  
1543 value in the list must be one of the operations from the enumeration defined by *OperationType* [4.3.7].

### 1544 4.3.7 OperationType

1545 Operations are used in the SDD to associate requirements and completion actions with particular  
1546 artifacts.

1547 For example, when a requirement defines an *operation* attribute with value *undo*, it is a statement that  
1548 the requirement must be met prior to processing of the undo artifact.

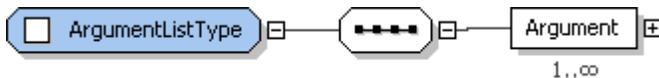
1549 *OperationType* enumerates the basic resource lifecycle operations that use the content and information  
 1550 defined in the SDD to change the state of the resources being installed, updated, or configured.

### 1551 4.3.7.1 OperationType Property Usage Notes

1552 Elements and attributes of *OperationType* MUST be set to one of the following values:

- 1553 ▪ **configure**: Uses the *ConfigArtifact* to perform configuration actions on a resource.
- 1554 ▪ **install**: Uses the *InstallArtifact* to install resources.
- 1555 ▪ **repair**: Uses the *RepairArtifact* to repair an installation.
- 1556 ▪ **undo**: Uses the *UndoArtifact* to restore a resource to the state before the most recent update was  
 1557 applied.
- 1558 ▪ **update**: Uses the *UpdateArtifact* to update an existing instance of a resource, as specified by the  
 1559 required base.
- 1560 ▪ **use**: Associates a requirement or completion action with use of the deployed software resources.  
 1561 Setting the operation attribute to *use* indicates that the requirement or completion action is not  
 1562 associated with an artifact.
- 1563 ▪ **uninstall**: Uses the *UninstallArtifact* to uninstall a resource.

### 1564 4.3.8 ArgumentListType



1565  
 1566 **Figure 24: ArgumentListType structure.**

1567 Each artifact MAY optionally include an *Arguments* element whose type is provided by *ArgumentListType*.  
 1568 This simply defines a list of *Argument* elements.

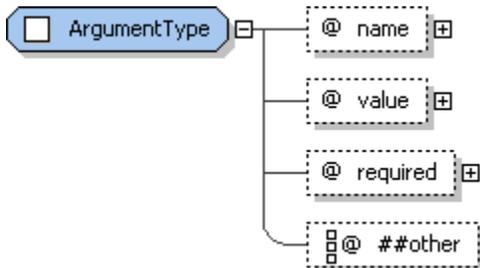
### 1569 4.3.8.1 ArgumentListType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Argument	ArgumentType	1..*	An input to artifact processing.

### 1570 4.3.8.2 ArgumentListType Property Usage Notes

- 1571 ▪ **Argument**: An argument value is a variable expression used to define a fixed value for the argument  
 1572 or to define a value in terms of one of the variables visible to the artifact.
- 1573 See the *ArgumentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.9].

### 1574 4.3.9 ArgumentType



1575  
 1576 **Figure 25: ArgumentType structure.**

1577 *ArgumentType* provides the type definition for *Argument* elements in artifacts [4.3.3]. This complex type is  
 1578 used to declare the argument name and optionally include a value for that argument.

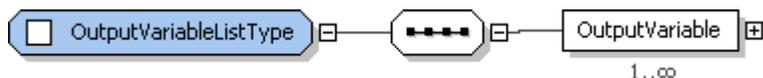
1579 **4.3.9.1 ArgumentType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
name	VariableExpressionType	1	The argument name.
value	VariableExpressionType	0..1	The argument value.
required	xsd:boolean	0..1	Indicates that the argument value must result in a valid expression for each particular deployment. **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1580 **4.3.9.2 ArgumentType Property Usage Notes**

- 1581 ▪ **name:** Evaluation of the *name* expression produces the name of the argument. This can be useful for  
1582 arguments with only a name, for example, those that are not name-value pairs.  
1583 When the argument name alone is sufficient to communicate its meaning, the argument value  
1584 SHOULD be omitted.  
1585 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1586 ▪ **value:** Evaluation of the *value* expression provides the value of the argument.  
1587 The variable expression MAY be used to define a fixed value for the argument or to define a value in  
1588 terms of one of the variables visible to the artifact.  
1589 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1590 ▪ **required:** In cases where the argument should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for  
1591 a particular deployment, set required to "false".

1592 **4.3.10 OutputVariableListType**



1593  
1594 **Figure 26: OutputVariableListType structure.**

1595 An artifact can set variables. The variables set by the artifact are defined in the artifact's *OutputVariables*.

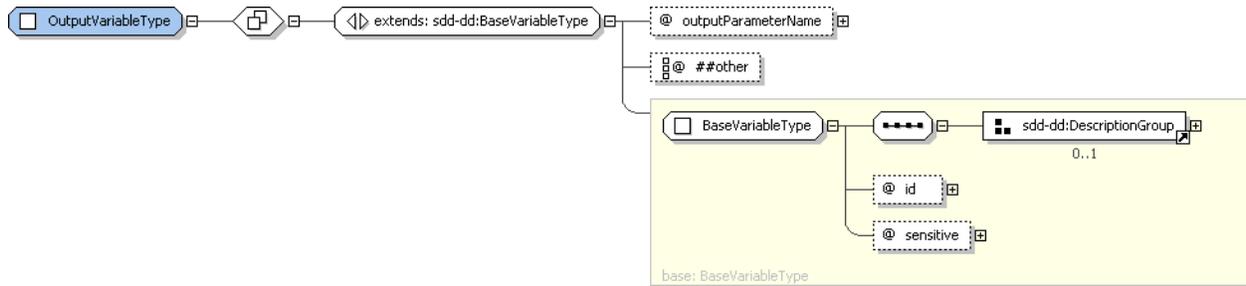
1596 **4.3.10.1 OutputVariableListType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
OutputVariable	OutputVariableType	1..*	An output from artifact processing.

1597 **4.3.10.2 OutputVariableListType Property Usage Notes**

- 1598 ▪ **OutputVariable:** This is the definition of the variable, not a reference to a variable defined elsewhere.  
1599 See the *OutputVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.11].

1600 **4.3.11 OutputVariableType**



1601  
1602 **Figure 27: OutputVariableType structure.**

1603 Output variables are variables whose value is set by artifact processing. *OutputVariableType* extends  
1604 *BaseVariableType* and so has all of the attributes defined there, including an *id* attribute that is used to  
1605 refer to the output variable within the SDD. Output variables can be useful in log and trace messages.

1606 **4.3.11.1 OutputVariableType Property Summary**

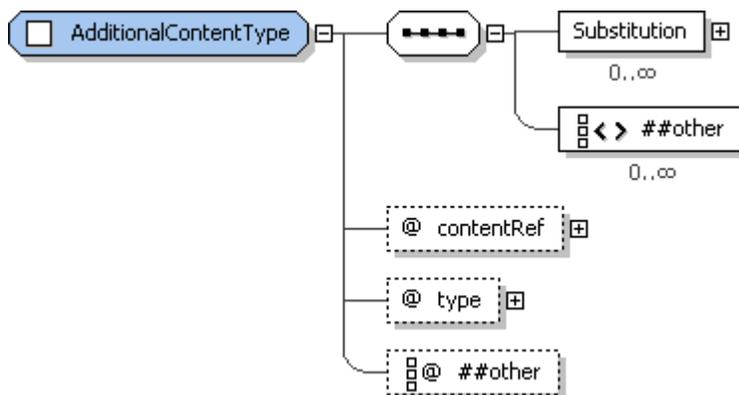
Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseVariableType		See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.2].
outputParameterName	xsd:NCName	0..1	An output from artifact processing.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1607 **4.3.11.2 OutputVariableType Property Usage Notes**

1608 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].

- 1609 ▪ **outputParameterName:** This is the name of the output variable as understood within the artifact  
1610 processing environment. The output value is associated with the output variable's *id*. The SDD author  
1611 uses this *id* within the SDD to refer to this output value.

1612 **4.3.12 AdditionalContentType**



1613  
1614 **Figure 28: AdditionalContentType structure.**

1615 When artifact processing requires more than a single file, the artifact declaration includes information  
1616 about the additional files needed. *AdditionalContentType* provides the type definition. Additional content  
1617 MAY include input files that need to be edited to include values received as input to a particular solution  
1618 deployment. In this case, the additional file can include a *Substitution* element.

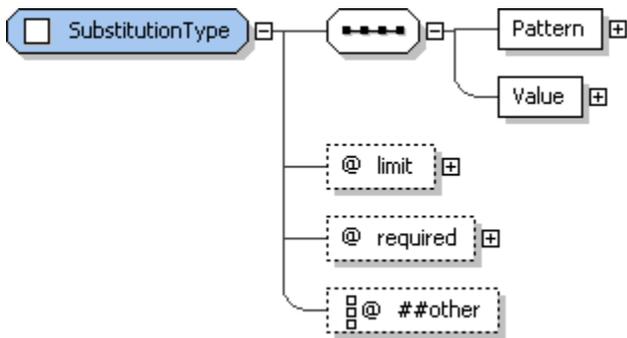
1619 **4.3.12.1 AdditionalContentType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Substitution	SubstitutionType	0..*	A value to substitute into the file.
	xsd:any	0..*	
contentRef	xsd:token	1	A reference to the content element's id defined in the package descriptor.
type	ArtifactTypeNameType	0..1	Type of the additional artifact file.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1620 **4.3.12.2 AdditionalContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 1621 ▪ **Substitution:** The *Substitution* element supports the use of files that require some editing before they  
1622 can be used in artifact processing. The definitions in this element support placement of values  
1623 determined during a particular deployment into the file identified by the *contentRef* attribute.  
1624 See the *SubstitutionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.13].
- 1625 ▪ **contentRef:** The *contentRef* attribute points back to the package descriptor for information about the  
1626 physical file. This value MUST match an *id* of a content element in the package descriptor.
- 1627 ▪ **type:** The *type* attribute identifies the format of the additional file. Values for this attribute are not  
1628 defined by this specification. *ArtifactTypeNameType* restricts values of *type* to valid `xsd:QNames`.

1629 **4.3.13 SubstitutionType**



1630  
1631 **Figure 29: SubstitutionType structure.**

1632 *SubstitutionType* provides the type definition for the *Substitution* element in *AdditionalContent*  
1633 declarations. It enables declaration of patterns in the file and the values that should replace the patterns  
1634 before the file is used in artifact processing.

1635 **4.3.13.1 SubstitutionType Property Summary**

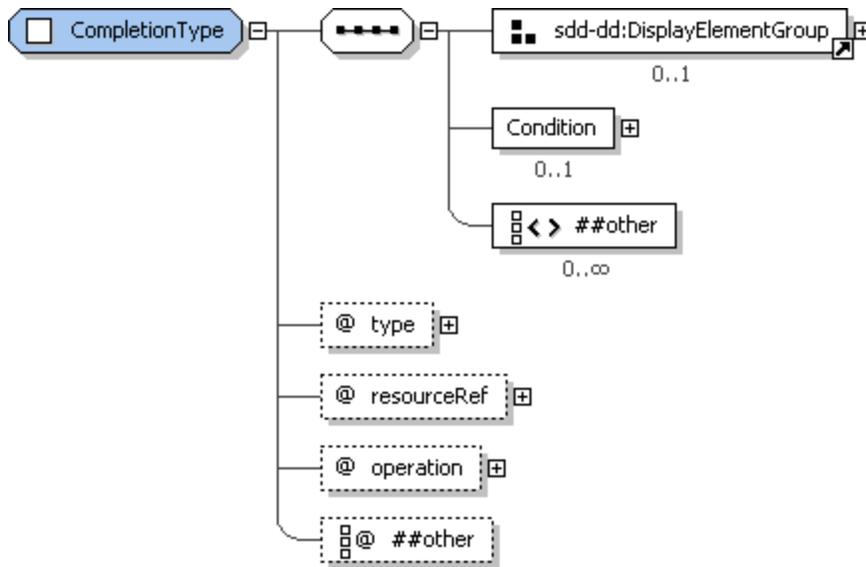
Name	Type	*	Description
Pattern	xsd:string	1	The search pattern in the file that needs to be substituted.
Value	VariableExpressionType	1	The value to be substituted in the file.
limit	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	The number of substitutions that should be made.
required	xsd:boolean	0..1	Indicates that substitution's value must result in a valid expression for each particular deployment. **default value="true"

xsd:anyAttribute	0..*
------------------	------

1636 **4.3.13.2 SubstitutionType Property Usage Notes**

- 1637
- 1638 ▪ **Pattern:** This is the string that will be replaced with the value when found in the file.
  - 1639 ▪ **Value:** Evaluation of the variable expression results in the value that will be substituted for the pattern.
  - 1640 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
  - 1641 ▪ **limit:** If *limit* is not defined, there is no limit and all instances of the pattern found in the file will be replaced.
  - 1642
  - 1643 ▪ **required:** In cases where the substitution should be ignored when the value expression is not valid
  - 1644 for a particular deployment, set *required* to "false".

1645 **4.3.14 CompletionType**



1646  
1647 **Figure 30: CompletionType structure.**

1648 For some deployments certain completion actions such as restart and logoff are required before a  
 1649 deployment operation using a particular content element can be considered complete. The  
 1650 *CompletionType* elements enable the SDD author to indicate either that one of these actions is required  
 1651 or that one of these actions will be performed by the associated artifact.

1652 **4.3.14.1 CompletionType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the completion action.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the completion action.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the completion action.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	Conditions that determine when the completion action will be used.
	xsd:any	0..*	
type	CompletionTypeNamesType	1	The type of the completion action.

resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The resource where the completion action will be executed.
operation	OperationListType	1	Associates a completion action with the processing of a particular artifact.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 1653 4.3.14.2 CompletionType Property Usage Notes

- 1654
- 1655
- 1656
- 1657
- 1658
- 1659
- 1660
- 1661
- 1662
- 1663
- 1664
- 1665
- 1666
- 1667
- 1668
- 1669
- 1670
- 1671
- 1672
- 1673
- 1674
- 1675
- 1676
- 1677
- 1678
- 1679
- 1680
- 1681
- 1682
- 1683
- 1684
- 1685
- **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the *Completion* element.  
See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the *Completion* element.  
The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - **Condition:** *Conditions* specified on resource characteristics determine if the completion action applies. If the conditions are met, the action applies. If not met, then the action is not needed. Unmet conditions are not considered a failure. When no conditions are defined, the action always applies.  
See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
  - **type:** This is the completion action that applies when conditions defined in *ResourceConstraint* are met. Allowed values defined in *CompletionTypeNameType* are:
    - **restartRequiredImmediately:** A system restart is required before the deployment operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform the restart. The restart MUST happen before further deployment actions are taken.
    - **restartRequiredBeforeUse:** A system restart is required before the deployment operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform this action. The restart MUST happen before the associated resources are used.
    - **restartOccurs:** The artifact associated with the lifecycle operation will initiate a system restart.
    - **logoffRequired:** A logoff and logon to the user account is required before the deployment operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform this action. The logoff and logon MUST happen before the operation can be considered complete.
  - **resourceRef:** This will often be the resource named as the target resource for the defining content element.  
The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
  - **operation:** A completion action is associated with the processing of one artifact by setting *operation* to the operation associated with that artifact. The element that defines the *Completion* MUST also define an artifact associated with the operation defined for the *Completion* element.  
See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

## 1686 4.4 Constraints

- 1687 The SDD author needs to communicate constraints on resources for a variety of purposes.
- 1688
- 1689
- 1690
- 1691
- 1692
- 1693
- Some constraints must be met for the requirements of a content element to be met. See the *RequirementsType* section [4.7.1].
  - Other constraints must be met for a resource to serve as the required base for an update. See the *RequiredBaseType* section [4.7.8].
  - Still others must be met for to satisfy a condition that determines the applicability of a content element or completion action. See the *ConditionType* section [4.5.1] and the *CompletionType* section [4.3.14].

1694 The *Constraint* types described in this section support identification of resource constraints in these  
 1695 various contexts. These types are:

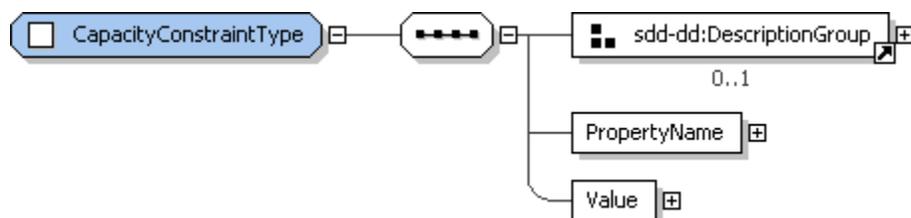
- 1696 ▪ *CapacityConstraint*
- 1697 ▪ *ConsumptionConstraint*
- 1698 ▪ *PropertyConstraint*
- 1699 ▪ *VersionConstraint*
- 1700 ▪ *UniquenessConstraint*
- 1701 ▪ *RelationshipConstraint*

1702 All of these constraint types are constraints on a property of a resource. There are different constraint  
 1703 types because there are distinct semantics for different types of resource properties. Examples of these  
 1704 varying semantics include constraints that the property value be:

- 1705 • within a certain range;
- 1706 • one of a set of values;
- 1707 • all of a set of values;
- 1708 • equal to a certain value;
- 1709 • no more than or no less than a certain value;
- 1710 • no more than or no less than a certain value when all constraints of that type are added  
 1711 together.

1712 In all cases, deployment software must be able to discover the property's value to honor the SDD author's  
 1713 intent.

#### 1714 4.4.1 CapacityConstraintType



1715  
 1716 **Figure 31: CapacityConstraintType structure.**

1717 *CapacityConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Capacity* elements of  
 1718 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. These elements are used to express a requirement on the  
 1719 capacity of a particular resource property such as memory available from an operating system. Capacity  
 1720 is shared: multiple capacity constraints expressed on the same property are evaluated individually without  
 1721 assuming any change to the available quantity of the property.

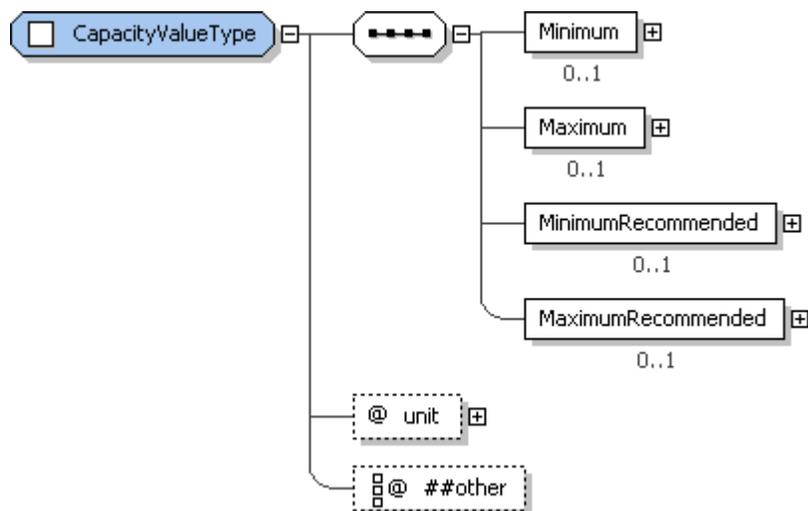
##### 1722 4.4.1.1 CapacityConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the capacity constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the capacity constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the constrained property.
Value	CapacityValueType	1	Bounds on the value of the constrained property.

1723 **4.4.1.2 CapacityConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1724 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1725 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the capacity constraint on the resource.  
1726 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1727 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1728 ▪ **PropertyName:** This name corresponds to the name of the constrained resource property in the  
1729 environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- 1730 ▪ **Value:** *Value* specifies the bound and optional recommended bound on the resource property  
1731 identified in the *PropertyName* element.  
1732 See the *CapacityValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.2].

1733 **4.4.2 CapacityValueType**



1734  
1735 **Figure 32: CapacityValueType structure.**

1736 Capacity value is expressed in terms of a minimum or maximum capacity. *CapacityValueType* provides  
1737 the elements that support this expression. It also supports expression of a recommended minimum or  
1738 maximum capacity.

1739 **4.4.2.1 CapacityValueType Property Summary**

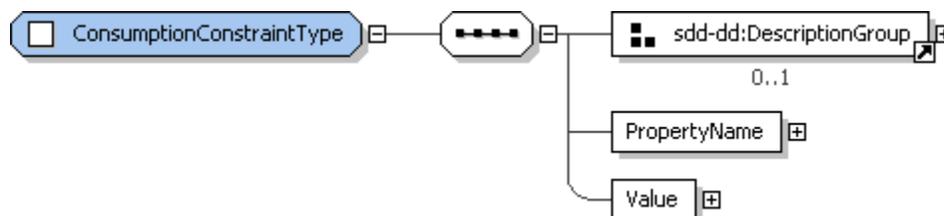
Name	Type	*	Description
Minimum	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Minimum capacity.
Maximum	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Maximum capacity.
MinimumRecommended	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Minimum recommended capacity.
MaximumRecommended	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Maximum recommended capacity.
unit	xsd:string	0..1	Unit of measure used to interpret the capacity value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1740 **4.4.2.2 CapacityValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1741 ▪ **Minimum:** There will usually be either a minimum value or a maximum value defined, but not both.  
1742 When minimum is specified, the actual value of the capacity property MUST be equal to or greater  
1743 than the minimum value.

- 1744 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1745 ▪ **Maximum:** When specified, the actual value of the capacity property MUST be less than or equal to
- 1746 the defined maximum.
- 1747 If *Minimum* and *Maximum* are both defined, *Minimum* MUST be less than or equal to *Maximum*.
- 1748 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1749 ▪ **MinimumRecommended:** The SDD author can indicate a preferred, but not required, minimum by
- 1750 defining a value for this element.
- 1751 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1752 ▪ **MaximumRecommended:** The SDD author can indicate a preferred, but not required, maximum by
- 1753 defining a value for this element.
- 1754 If *MinimumRecommended* and *MaximumRecommended* are both defined, *MinimumRecommended*
- 1755 MUST be less than or equal to *MaximumRecommended*.
- 1756 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1757 ▪ **unit:** Values for *unit* SHOULD be well-known units of measure from the International System of Units
- 1758 **[UNIT]**. A unit of measure SHOULD be specified for all properties that are measured in any kind of
- 1759 unit.

### 1760 4.4.3 ConsumptionConstraintType



1761  
1762 **Figure 33: ConsumptionConstraintType structure.**

1763 *ConsumptionConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Consumption* elements of

1764 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. These elements are used to express a requirement on the

1765 available quantity of a particular resource property such as disk space on a file system.

1766 *ConsumptionConstraints* represent exclusive use of the defined quantity of the resource property. In other

1767 words, consumption constraints are additive, with each consumption constraint specified in the SDD

1768 adding to the total requirement for the specified resource(s). A consumption constraint is assumed to alter

1769 the available quantity such that the portion of the property used to satisfy one constraint is not available to

1770 satisfy another consumption constraint on the same property.

1771 For example, suppose that the target file system has 80 megabytes available. The application of a

1772 content element's *InstallArtifact* results in installation of files that use 5 megabytes of file space. The

1773 application of a second *InstallArtifact* results in installation of files that use 2 megabytes of file space.

1774 Consumption constraints are additive, so the total space used for this content element is 7

1775 megabytes, leaving 73 (80–7) megabytes available on the target file system.

#### 1776 4.4.3.1 ConsumptionConstraintType Property Summary

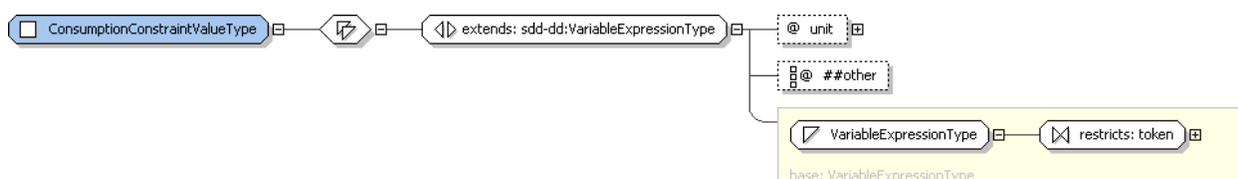
Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the consumption constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the consumption constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Names the resource property to test.
Value	ConsumptionConstraintValueType	1	A variable expression defining the minimum available

			quantity.
--	--	--	-----------

### 1777 4.4.3.2 ConsumptionConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- 1778 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1779 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the consumption constraint on the resource.  
1780 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1781 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1782 ▪ **PropertyName:** The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment  
1783 environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- 1784 ▪ **Value:** The result of evaluating this variable expression represents the minimum quantity of the  
1785 named resource property that MUST be available for successful deployment of the defining content  
1786 element's artifacts. This quantity will be consumed by application of the associated artifact.  
1787 See the *ConsumptionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.4].

### 1788 4.4.4 ConsumptionConstraintValueType



1789  
1790 **Figure 34: ConsumptionConstraintValueType structure.**

1791 A consumption value is defined using a variable expression. *ConsumptionConstraintValueType* provides  
1792 the variable expression by extending *VariableExpressionType*.

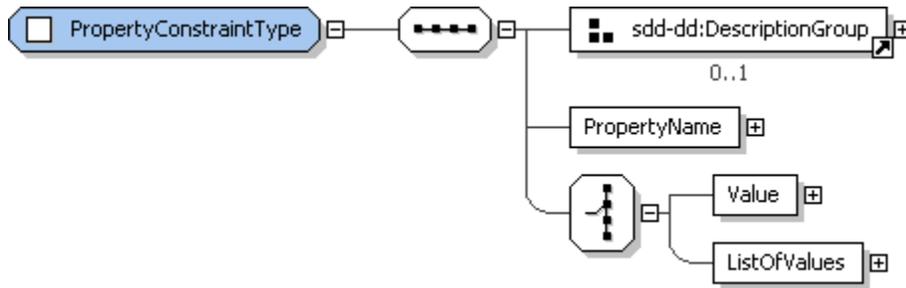
### 1793 4.4.4.1 ConsumptionConstraintValueType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] VariableExpressionType		See the VariableExpressionType section for additional properties [4.6.1].
unit	xsd:string	0..1	Unit of measure used to interpret the consumption value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

### 1794 4.4.4.2 ConsumptionConstraintValueType Property Usage Notes

- 1795 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.1].
- 1796 ▪ **unit:** Values for *unit* SHOULD be well-known units of measure from International System of Units  
1797 **[UNIT]**. A unit of measure SHOULD be specified for all properties which are measured in any kind of  
1798 unit.

1799 **4.4.5 PropertyConstraintType**



1800  
1801 **Figure 35: PropertyConstraintType structure.**

1802 *PropertyConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Property* elements of  
1803 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. It supports definition of a required value or set of  
1804 acceptable values for a particular resource property.

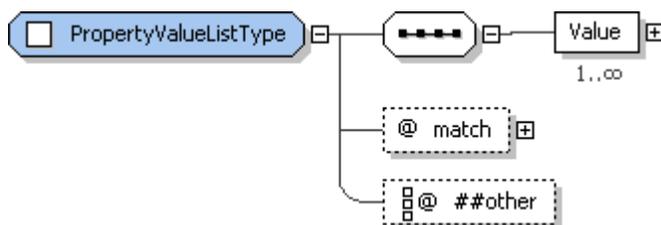
1805 **4.4.5.1 PropertyConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the property constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the property constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the constrained property.
Value	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Required property value.
ListOfValues	PropertyValueListType	0..1	List of required property values.

1806 **4.4.5.2 PropertyConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1807 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1808 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the property constraint on the resource.  
1809 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1810 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1811 ▪ **PropertyName:** The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment  
1812 environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- 1813 ▪ **Value:** The result of evaluating this variable expression represents the required value of the named  
1814 resource property.  
1815 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1816 ▪ **ListOfValues:** A list of required values can be defined in place of a single required value.  
1817 See the *PropertyValueListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.6].

1818 **4.4.6 PropertyValueListType**



1819

1820 **Figure 36: PropertyValueListType structure.**

1821 A property value list is expressed as one or more strings representing valid values for the property.

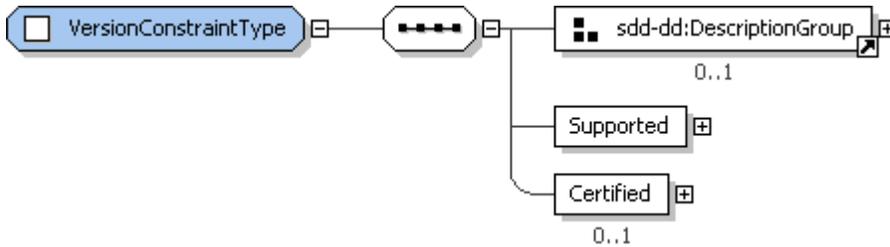
1822 **4.4.6.1 PropertyValueListType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Value	VariableExpressionType	1..*	A property value.
match	PropertyMatchType	0..1	Determines whether the actual property value must match any or all of the listed values. **default value="any"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1823 **4.4.6.2 PropertyValueListType Property Usage Notes**

- 1824 ▪ **Value:** The result of this variable expression represents one possible required value of the named  
1825 resource property.  
1826 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1827 ▪ **match:** The value or values of the property found in the deployment environment are compared to the  
1828 value or values listed in the property constraint. *PropertyMatchType* defines two enumerated values:  
1829 *any* and *all*. When *match* is set to *any*, the property constraint is considered met when any one of the  
1830 found property values matches any one of the declared property values. When *match* is set to *all*, the  
1831 constraint is considered met when all of the declared property values match values found for the  
1832 property.

1833 **4.4.7 VersionConstraintType**



1834 **Figure 37: VersionConstraintType structure.**

1836 *VersionConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *VersionConstraint* elements of  
1837 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. A *VersionConstraint* can define a set of individual versions  
1838 or ranges of versions that are supported and a similar set that are certified.

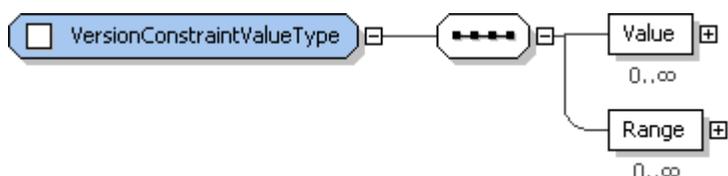
1839 **4.4.7.1 VersionConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the version constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the version constraint.
Supported	VersionConstraintValueType	1	A supported version or set of versions.
Certified	VersionConstraintValueType	0..1	A subset of the supported versions that are certified as tested.

1840 **4.4.7.2 VersionConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1841 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1842 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the version constraint on the resource.  
1843 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1844 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1845 ▪ **Supported:** If the resource version is in the *Supported* set, it meets the requirements.  
1846 See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].
- 1847 ▪ **Certified:** In some cases the set of required versions may be different from the set of versions that  
1848 are certified by the manufacturer as thoroughly tested.  
1849 See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].

1850 **4.4.8 VersionConstraintValueType**



1851  
1852 **Figure 38: VersionConstraintValueType structure.**

1853 A version constraint can be specified using any number of individual version values in combination with  
1854 any number of version ranges.

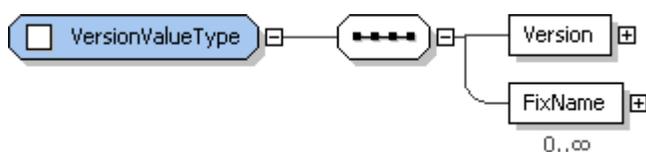
1855 **4.4.8.1 VersionConstraintValueType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Value	VersionValueType	0..*	A version value with associated fixes specified.
Range	VersionRangeType	0..*	A range of version values with associated fixes specified for each range.

1856 **4.4.8.2 VersionConstraintValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1857 ▪ **Value:** Discrete version values can be defined when the set of required versions includes versions  
1858 that do not fall within a range. There is no assumption by this specification that version values are  
1859 numerically comparable. The method of comparing version values may be resource-specific.  
1860 See the *VersionValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.9].
- 1861 ▪ **Range:** See the *VersionRangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.10].

1862 **4.4.9 VersionValueType**



1863  
1864 **Figure 39: VersionValueType structure.**

1865 A version value includes a version and a list of required fixes associated with that version.

1866 **4.4.9.1 VersionValueType Property Summary**

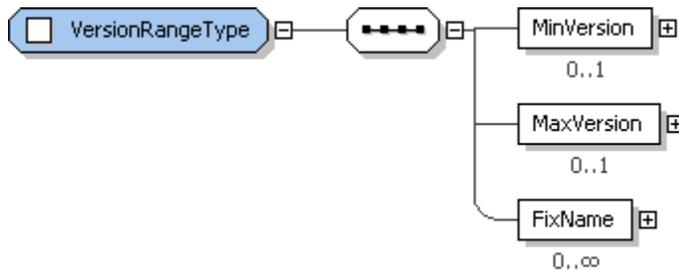
Name	Type	*	Description
------	------	---	-------------

Version	VersionType	1	An allowable version value.
FixName	xsd:string	0..*	The name of a fix.

1867 **4.4.9.2 VersionValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1868
- 1869 ▪ **Version:** A string containing a single, exact version value. This is compared with the version value of specific resource instances. Only equal values satisfy this part of the constraint.
  - 1870 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
  - 1871 ▪ **FixName:** Any number of *FixName* elements can be defined, identifying fixes that must be discovered to be applied for the version constraint to be considered met.
  - 1872

1873 **4.4.10 VersionRangeType**



1874

1875 **Figure 40: VersionRangeType structure.**

1876 A *VersionRange* is specified with a minimum and maximum version value and a list of required fixes associated with that range. The method of comparing version strings in a version range is resource-specific.

1877

1878

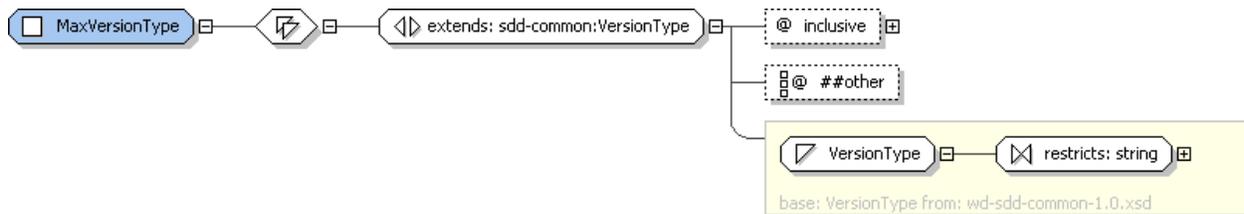
1879 **4.4.10.1 VersionRangeType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
MinVersion	VersionType	0..1	The least allowable version value.
MaxVersion	MaxVersionType	0..1	The greatest allowable version value.
FixName	xsd:string	0..*	The name of a fix.

1880 **4.4.10.2 VersionRangeType Property Usage Notes**

- 1881
- 1882 ▪ **MinVersion:** This is the lower bound of a version range. If *MinVersion* is defined but *MaxVersion* is not, there is no upper bound. A version that is equal to *MinVersion* is within the defined range.
  - 1883 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
  - 1884 ▪ **MaxVersion:** This is the upper bound of a version range. If *MaxVersion* is defined but *MinVersion* is not, there is no lower bound. A version that is equal to *MaxVersion* may be within the defined range depending on the value specified for the *inclusive* attribute.
  - 1885
  - 1886
  - 1887 See the *MaxVersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.11].
  - 1888 ▪ **FixName:** Any number of *FixNames* can be defined identifying fixes that must be found to be applied for the version constraint is to be considered satisfied. This is true for all versions within the defined range.
  - 1889
  - 1890
  - 1891 When *FixName* is defined, either a *MinVersion* or a *MaxVersion* element MUST also be defined.

1892 **4.4.11 MaxVersionType**



1893  
1894 **Figure 41: MaxVersionType structure.**

1895 A maximum version can be inclusive or exclusive.

1896 **4.4.11.1 MaxVersionType Property Summary**

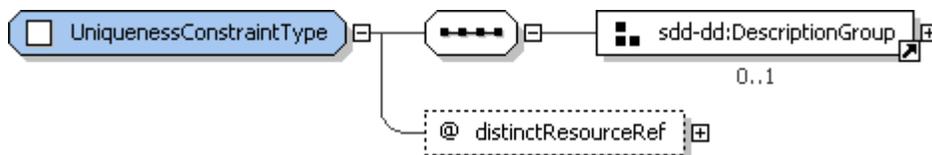
Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] VersionType		See the VersionType section for additional properties [3.10].
inclusive	xsd:boolean	0..1	Indicates whether the max version value is included in the supported range of versions. **default value="false"
	xsd:any	0..*	

1897 **4.4.11.2 MaxVersionType Property Usage Notes**

1898 See the *VersionType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [3.10].

- 1899 ▪ **inclusive:** The *inclusive* attribute allows the SDD author to choose the semantics of maximum  
1900 version. Supported ranges are often everything equal to or greater than the minimum version and up  
1901 to, but not including, the maximum version. Sometimes it is more convenient for the range to include  
1902 the maximum version.

1903 **4.4.12 UniquenessConstraintType**



1904  
1905 **Figure 42: UniquenessConstraintType structure.**

1906 A *UniquenessConstraint* is used to indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT  
1907 resolve to the same resource instance during a particular deployment. A *UniquenessConstraint* indicates  
1908 that the two resources MUST NOT be the same when it is defined in a *ResourceConstraint* element with  
1909 testValue="true". A *UniquenessConstraint* indicates that the two resources MUST be the same when  
1910 defined in a *ResourceConstraint* with testValue="false".

1911 When no *UniquenessConstraint* is in scope for a particular pair of resources, the two resources MAY  
1912 resolve to the same resource when their identifying characteristics are the same and when all in-scope  
1913 constraints on both resources are satisfied.

1914 The first of the pair of resources is identified in the *resourceRef* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint*  
1915 element that defines the *UniquenessConstraint*. The second of the pair is identified in the  
1916 *distinctResourceRef* attribute of the *UniquenessConstraint*.

1917 **4.4.12.1 UniquenessConstraintType Property Summary**

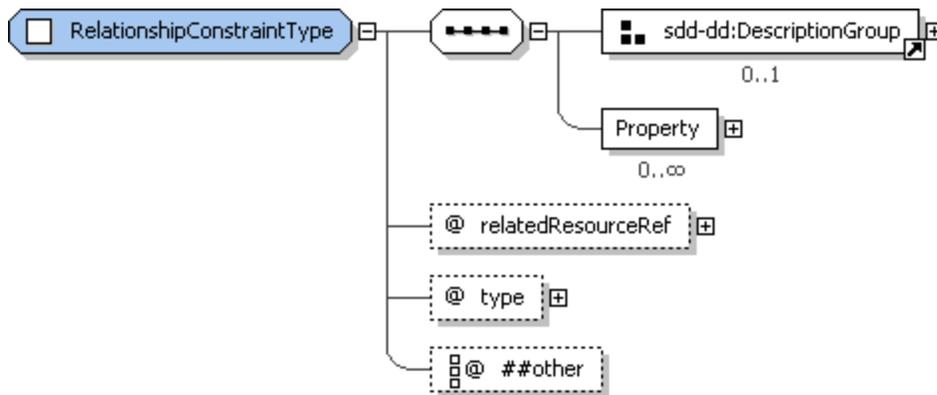
Name	Type	*	Description
------	------	---	-------------

Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the uniqueness constraint, for example what must or must not be unique and why.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the uniqueness constraint.
distinctResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	One of the pair of resources referred to by the constraint.

1918 **4.4.12.2 UniquenessConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1919
- 1920
- 1921
- 1922
- 1923
- 1924
- **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the uniqueness constraint on the resource. The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined. See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
  - **distinctResourceRef:** The second resource in the pair of resources. The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

1925 **4.4.13 RelationshipConstraintType**



1926

1927 **Figure 43: RelationshipConstraintType structure.**

1928 A *RelationshipConstraint* identifies a particular relationship between two resources that is constrained in  
 1929 some way by the SDD. The value of the *testValue* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint* that contains the  
 1930 *RelationshipConstraint* determines whether the constraint MUST be satisfied or MUST NOT be satisfied.  
 1931 The first resource of the pair is defined by the *resourceRef* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint* containing  
 1932 the *RelationshipConstraint*.

1933 **4.4.13.1 RelationshipConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the relationship and its purpose in the overall solution.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the relationship.
Property	PropertyType	0..*	A property constraint that further constrains the relationship.
relatedResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	0..1	The second resource in the relationship.
type	xsd:QName	1	The type of the relationship.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

1934 **4.4.13.2 RelationshipConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 1935 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
1936 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the relationship constraint on the resource.  
1937 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
1938 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1939 ▪ **Property:** This element MAY be used to provide additional constraints on the relationship.  
1940 For example, a connectivity relationship might specify additional information such as the specific  
1941 protocol used (for instance, TCP/IP) and/or particular characteristics of a protocol (for instance,  
1942 port number).  
1943 See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].
- 1944 ▪ **relatedResourceRef:** Naming the second resource is optional. When it is not named, the relationship  
1945 constraint is satisfied if the first resource has the defined relationship with any other resource.  
1946 When it is named, the value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 1947 ▪ **type:** Values for relationship type are not defined by the SDD specification.

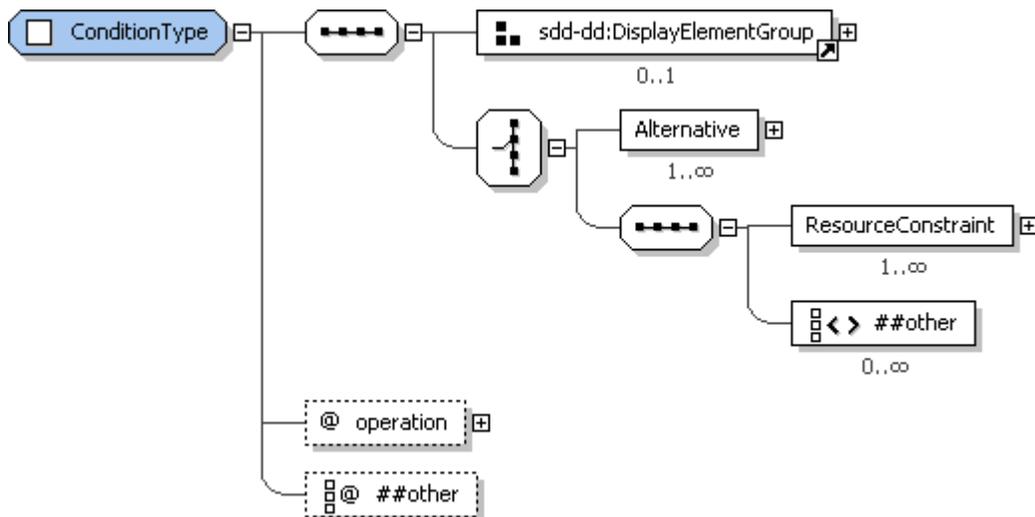
1948 **4.5 Conditions**

1949 Conditions are expressed on characteristics of resources in the deployment environment. Conditions are  
1950 used to indicate when particular elements of the SDD are applicable, or when they should be ignored.  
1951 Conditions are not requirements. Failure to satisfy a condition does not indicate a failure; it simply means  
1952 the conditioned element should be ignored. Conditions are used to:

- 1953 ▪ determine if a content element is applicable
- 1954 ▪ choose from among values for a variable
- 1955 ▪ determine when a feature is applicable
- 1956 ▪ determine when a particular result is applicable
- 1957 ▪ determine if a particular completion action is necessary.

1958 Because conditions are always based on the characteristics of resources, they are expressed using  
1959 resource constraints.

1960 **4.5.1 ConditionType**



1961 **Figure 44: ConditionType structure.**  
1962

1963 *ConditionType* allows expression of the particular resource characteristics that must be true for the  
 1964 condition to be considered met. These are resource characteristics that may vary from one particular  
 1965 deployment to another.

1966 For example, one deployment using the SDD might use one version of an application server and a  
 1967 different deployment might use a different version. The differences in the version might be great  
 1968 enough to:

- 1969 • select among content elements.

1970 For example, one content element has an artifact for a Web application that works in a  
 1971 particular version and a different content element has an artifact for a later version of the  
 1972 same Web application.

- 1973 • select among variable values.

1974 For example, the default installation path on one operating system may be different from the  
 1975 default install path on another operating system.

- 1976 • select among completion actions.

1977 For example, a reboot may be required when deploying on one operating system but not  
 1978 another.

#### 1979 4.5.1.1 ConditionType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the condition.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the condition.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the condition.
Alternative	AlternativeConditionalType	0..*	An alternative set of resource constraints.
ResourceConstraint	ConditionalResourceConstraintType	0..*	A set of constraints on one resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
operation	OperationListType	0..1	The condition applies only when processing the artifact associated with this operation.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 1980 4.5.1.2 ConditionType Property Usage Notes

- 1981 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
 1982 MUST provide a label for the condition.

1983 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 1984 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 1985 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the condition.

1986 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

1987 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 1988 ▪ **Alternative:** When a condition can be satisfied in multiple ways, two or more *Alternative* elements are  
 1989 defined.

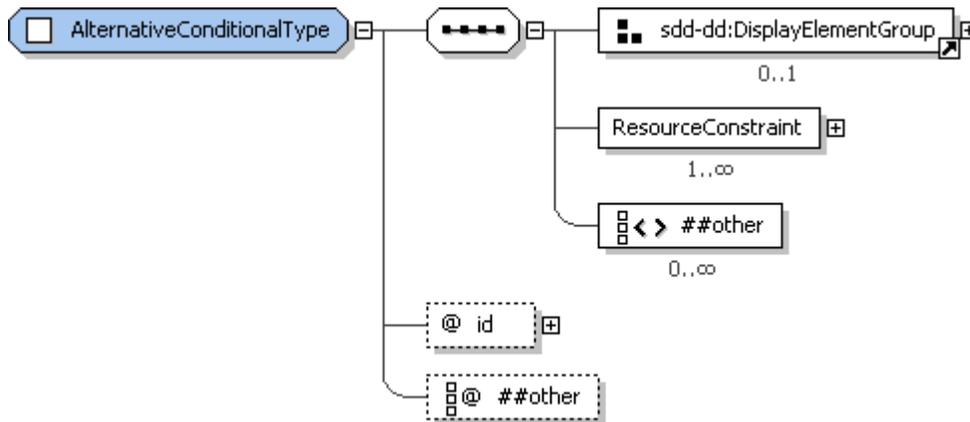
1990 As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, it is also possible to define a single *Alternative*.  
 1991 This is semantically identical to directly defining *ResourceConstraints*.

1992 To meet a condition, at least one of the specified *Alternatives* must be satisfied.

1993 See the *AlternativeConditionalType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.2].

- 1994   ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** When a condition can be satisfied in only one way, constraints MAY be
- 1995    defined directly under *Condition* or in a single *Alternative* element.
- 1996    Constraints are defined using a sequence of *ResourceConstraints*. Every constraint in the sequence
- 1997    must be met for the condition to be met.
- 1998    See the *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.3].
- 1999   ▪ **operation:** In a singleton atomic content element, a condition MAY be associated with application of
- 2000    one or more artifacts. The association is made by setting the *operation* attribute to the operations
- 2001    associated with those artifacts.
- 2002    *Conditions* defined for *CompositeInstallable* and for atomic content elements defined within a
- 2003    *CompositeInstallable* SHOULD NOT define *operation*. If the *operation* is defined for a
- 2004    *CompositeInstallable Condition*, it MUST be set to the operation defined in the *CompositeInstallable's*
- 2005    *operation* attribute. If *operation* is defined for an atomic content element's *Condition*, it MUST be set
- 2006    to the operation associated with the single artifact defined by the atomic content element.
- 2007    When *operation* is not specified, the condition applies to the processing of all artifacts.
- 2008    See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

2009   **4.5.2 AlternativeConditionalType**



2010  
2011   **Figure 45: AlternativeConditionalType structure.**

2012   When a condition can be met in more than one way, alternative sets of conditional resource constraints  
2013   can be defined. *AlternativeConditionalType* provides the type definition for these elements.

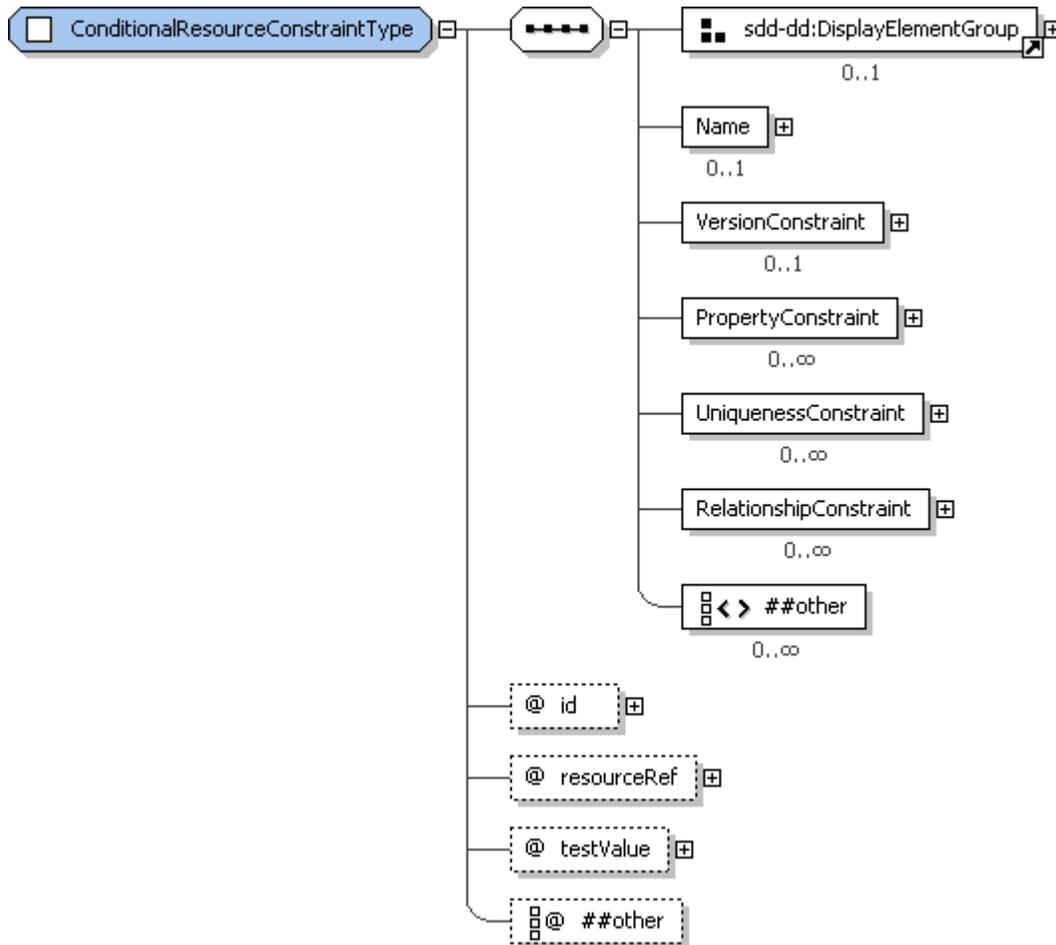
2014   **4.5.2.1 AlternativeConditionalType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the alternative.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description for the alternative.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the alternative.
ResourceConstraint	ConditionalResourceConstraintType	1..*	A set of constraints on one resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:IDREF	1	Identifier for the alternative that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2015 **4.5.2.2 AlternativeConditionalType Property Usage Notes**

- 2016 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2017 MUST provide a label for the alternative condition.
- 2018 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2019 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2020 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative condition.
- 2021 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2022 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2023 ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** All constraints defined in the individual *Alternative* MUST be met for the  
2024 *Alternative* condition to evaluate to true.
- 2025 See the *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.3].
- 2026 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2027 log and trace messages.

2028 **4.5.3 ConditionalResourceConstraintType**



2029  
2030 **Figure 46: ConditionalResourceConstraintType structure.**

2031 *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* provides the type definitions for the *ResourceConstraint* elements  
2032 used in conditions. These constraints do not represent requirements for deployment. They identify the  
2033 resource characteristics associated with a condition. Name, version, property and the existence or  
2034 absence of the resource can be specified with a resource constraint used in a condition.

### 4.5.3.1 ConditionalResourceConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the resource constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description for the resource constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the resource constraint.
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Name of the resource constraint.
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintValueType	0..1	A resource version set.
PropertyConstraint	ConditionalPropertyConstraintType	0..*	A resource property name and required value.
UniquenessConstraint	UniquenessConstraintType	0..*	A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.
RelationshipConstraint	RelationshipConstraintType	0..*	A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the resource constraint that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The resource to which the conditions apply.
testValue	xsd:boolean	0..1	The result of evaluating the contained constraints, which will result in the ResourceConstraint being met. **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

### 4.5.3.2 ConditionalResourceConstraintType Property Usage Notes

2037   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2038   MUST provide a label for the resource constraint.

2039   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

2040   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2041   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the resource constraint.

2042   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

2043   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

2044   ▪ **Name:** The name of the resource identified by *resourceRef*. If the resource name is defined in  
2045   topology it SHOULD NOT be defined here. If it is defined in both places, the one defined in the  
2046   condition is used when evaluating the condition.

2047   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

2048   ▪ **VersionConstraint:** The actual version of the resource MUST be one of the set of versions defined  
2049   here for the version condition to be considered met.

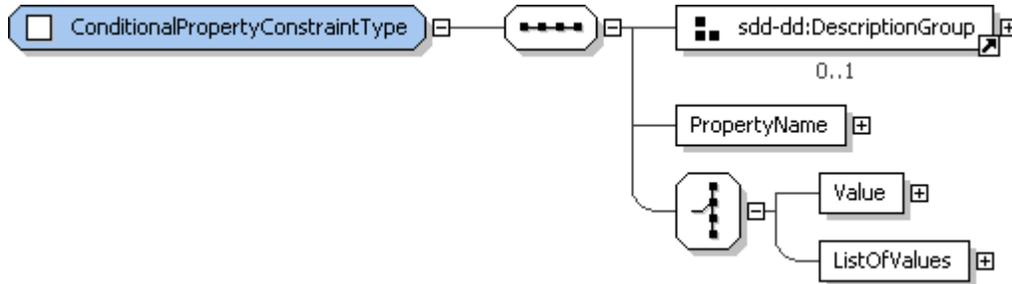
2050   See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].

2051   ▪ **PropertyConstraint:** The actual value of the property MUST match the value defined here for the  
2052   condition to be considered met.

2053   See the *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.4].

- 2054   ▪ **UniquenessConstraint:** *UniquenessConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to
- 2055    indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource
- 2056    instance during a particular deployment.
- 2057    See the *UniquenessConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.12].
- 2058   ▪ **RelationshipConstraint:** *RelationshipConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to
- 2059    indicate a constraint on a particular relationship between resources.
- 2060    See the *RelationshipConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.13].
- 2061   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2062    log and trace messages.
- 2063   ▪ **resourceRef:** The version and property constraints defined here all apply to the one resource
- 2064    specification in topology identified by this attribute.
- 2065    The value MUST reference the *id* of that resource element in *Topology*.
- 2066   ▪ **testValue:** When the result of evaluating *Name* and all of the constraints defined in the
- 2067    *ResourceConstraint* matches the value of *testValue*, the *ResourceConstraint* is considered met.
- 2068    When no name, version or property constraints are defined, and *testValue* is “true”, the constraint is
- 2069    met if the resource exists as defined in topology.
- 2070    When no name, version or property constraints are defined, and *testValue* is “false”, the constraint is
- 2071    met if the resource, as defined in topology, does not exist.

2072   **4.5.4 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType**



2073  
2074   **Figure 47: ConditionalPropertyConstraintType structure.**

2075   *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* provides the type definition for a *PropertyConstraint* included within

2076   *Alternatives* specified in *Condition* elements. The *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* is very similar to the

2077   *PropertyConstraintType*; the only difference is that the *Value* element defined in the

2078   *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* is of type `xsd:string` which is less restrictive than the *Value*

2079   element defined in the *PropertyConstraintType* which is of *VariableExpressionType*.

2080   **4.5.4.1 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the property constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the property constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the constrained property.
Value	xsd:string	0..1	Required property value.
ListOfValues	PropertyValueListType	0..1	List of required property values.

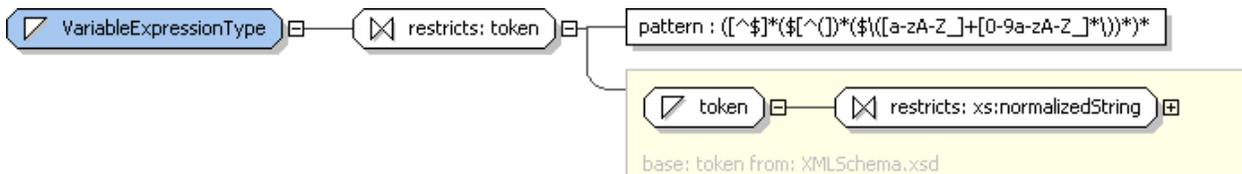
2081 **4.5.4.2 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 2082 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
- 2083 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the *PropertyConstraint* element.
- 2084 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2085 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2086 ▪ **PropertyName:** The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment
- 2087 environment. The name may be defined in a profile [5.3].
- 2088 ▪ **Value:** In a condition, the value used in a property constraint is a string rather than a variable
- 2089 expression.
- 2090 ▪ **ListOfValues:** A list of required values can be defined in place of a single required value.
- 2091 See the *PropertyValueListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.6].

2092 **4.6 Variables**

2093 Variables provide a means to associate user inputs, resource property values, fixed strings and values  
2094 derived from these with input arguments for artifacts and with constraints on resources.

2095 **4.6.1 VariableExpressionType**



2096  
2097 **Figure 48: VariableExpressionType structure.**

2098 Variable expressions are used in many places in the SDD. They allow the value of a variable to be used  
2099 as all, or part of, the value of some other SDD element. A variable expression is a string that can include  
2100 a reference to a variable. The string is evaluated by replacing all references to variables with the value of  
2101 the variable. A variable reference is a variable id placed inside parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.

2102 For example, the variable expression “C:\Program Files\\$(InstallDirectory)” resolves to “C:\Program  
2103 Files\Acme Software Product” if the value of the variable with the id “InstallDirectory” has the value  
2104 “Acme Software Product”.

2105 The value of a variable that is replaced into a variable expression can itself have a variable reference.  
2106 This reference is resolved before using the value. This nesting of variable expressions is unlimited. Any  
2107 number of variable references can be used in a variable expression. If a variable expression string does  
2108 not contain a variable reference, it is used as is.

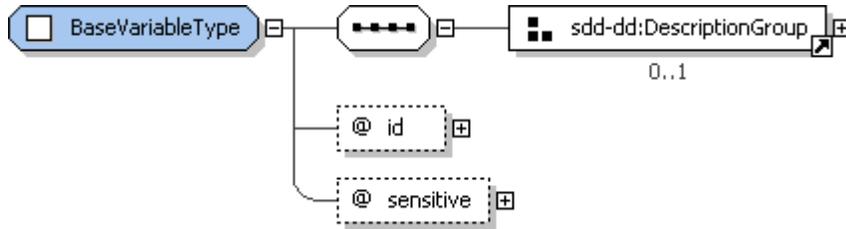
2109 A variable is considered defined if it has a value provided, even if that value is the empty string. A variable  
2110 expression is considered valid if it contains no variable references, or if all contained variable references  
2111 are defined.

2112 Specifically, a *ResourceProperty* variable is undefined when the resource does not participate in the  
2113 particular deployment or when the specified property has no value. A *Parameter* variable is undefined  
2114 when it has no default value and has no value provided by the deployer. A *DerivedVariable* that uses  
2115 *ConditionalExpression* elements is undefined when none of its conditions evaluates to true, or the  
2116 selected condition's value expression is not valid. A *DerivedVariable* that uses an unconditioned  
2117 *Expression* is undefined when its value expression is undefined.

2118 To avoid an undefined *Parameter* variable, default parameter values may be used. To avoid an undefined  
2119 *ResourceProperty* variable, replace references to the *ResourceProperty* variable with references to a  
2120 *DerivedVariable* defined to provide a default value in cases where the *ResourceProperty* is undefined.  
2121 This *DerivedVariable* would define one expression, conditioned on the resource, that refers to the  
2122 *ResourceProperty* variable and another, low priority, catch-all expression that defines the desired  
2123 “default” value. Note that the default value in either of these cases MAY be an empty string, for example,

2124 "" . An empty string acts just like any other defined variable value. When the provided value of a variable is  
 2125 an empty string, the variable reference in a variable expression is replaced by an empty string.

2126 **4.6.2 BaseVariableType**



2127  
 2128 **Figure 49: BaseVariableType structure.**

2129 *BaseVariableType* is the base type of the *DerivedVariable* and *ResourceProperty* elements defined by  
 2130 *VariablesType* [4.6.3]. It provides the *id* attribute, which is used to reference the variable in a variable  
 2131 expression.

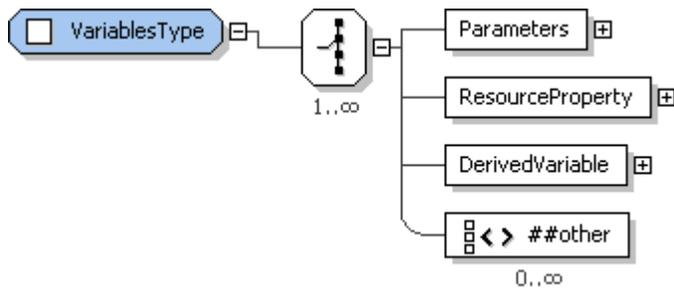
2132 **4.6.2.1 BaseVariableType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the variable.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the variable.
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier used for referencing the variable within the descriptor.
sensitive	xsd:boolean	0..1	A "true" value indicates the variable contains sensitive data. **default value="false"

2133 **4.6.2.2 BaseVariableType Property Usage Notes**

- 2134 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2135 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the variable.  
 2136 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2137 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2138 ▪ **id:** Variables may be referenced in deployment descriptor elements of type *VariableExpression* within  
 2139 the scope of the variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element where defined and  
 2140 all nested content elements. *Variables* defined in the top level content element are also visible in  
 2141 *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id* within parentheses preceded by a  
 2142 dollar sign.  
 2143 For example, a variable with *id* value "InstallLocation" is referenced with the string  
 2144 "\$ (InstallLocation)".  
 2145 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 2146 log and trace messages.
- 2147 ▪ **sensitive:** The *sensitive* attribute provides an indication of whether the data within a variable is likely  
 2148 to be considered sensitive. User name and password are examples of data that may be considered  
 2149 sensitive.  
 2150 For example, *sensitive* data typically would not be displayed in a user interface, written to a log  
 2151 file, stored without protection, or in any way made visible except to authorized users.  
 2152 The default value is "false".

2153 **4.6.3 VariablesType**



2154  
2155 **Figure 50: VariablesType structure.**

2156 There are three types of variables that can be defined in a content element,  
2157 variables that take the value of a resource property, and variables whose value is derived from a variable  
2158 expression.

2159 A variable is in scope for a particular deployment when the content element that defines the variable is in  
2160 scope for that deployment.

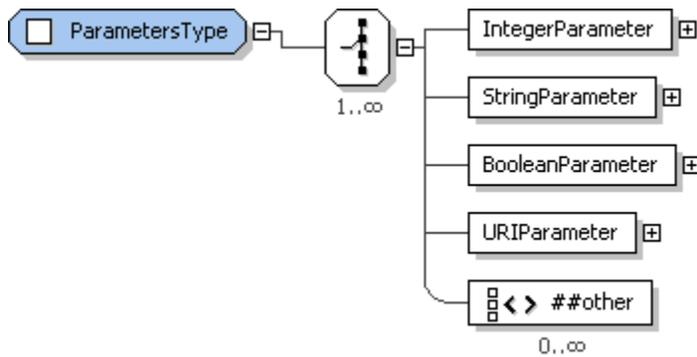
2161 **4.6.3.1 VariablesType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Parameters	ParametersType	0..*	A list of variables whose values can be supplied as input to the deployment process.
ResourceProperty	ResourcePropertyType	0..*	A variable whose value is set from the value of a resource property.
DerivedVariable	DerivedVariableType	0..*	A set of expressions with optional associated conditions. The DerivedVariable's value is determined by evaluating the conditions and then setting the variable value to the result of the top priority expression from the set of expressions whose conditions evaluate to true.
	xsd:any	0..*	

2162 **4.6.3.2 VariablesType Property Usage Notes**

- 2163 ▪ **Parameters:** See the *ParametersType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.4].
- 2164 ▪ **ResourceProperty:** See the *ResourcePropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2165 [4.6.12].
- 2166 ▪ **DerivedVariable:** See the *DerivedVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2167 [4.6.13].

2168 **4.6.4 ParametersType**



2169  
2170 **Figure 51: ParametersType structure.**

2171 Parameters are variables whose value is expected to be received as input to the deployment process.  
2172 The SDD author can specify multiple specific types of parameters, including validation rules for the values  
2173 of the parameters.

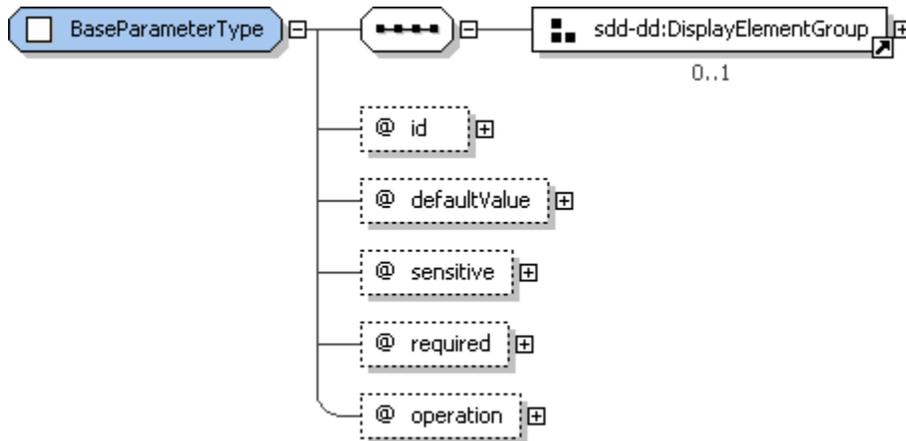
2174 **4.6.4.1 ParametersType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
IntegerParameter	IntegerParameterType	0..*	An integer input parameter.
StringParameter	StringParameterType	0..*	A string input parameter.
BooleanParameter	BooleanParameterType	0..*	A boolean input parameter.
URIPParameter	URIPParameterType	0..*	A Universal Resource Identifier input parameter.
	xsd:any	0..*	

2175 **4.6.4.2 ParametersType Property Usage Notes**

- 2176 ▪ **IntegerParameter:** See the *IntegerParameterType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2177 [4.6.6].
- 2178 ▪ **StringParameter:** See the *StringParameterType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2179 [4.6.8].
- 2180 ▪ **BooleanParameter:** See the *BooleanParameterType* section for structure and additional usage  
2181 details [4.6.10].
- 2182 ▪ **URIPParameter:** See the *URIPParameterType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2183 [4.6.11].

2184 **4.6.5 BaseParameterType**



2185  
2186 **Figure 52: BaseParameterType structure.**

2187 *BaseParameterType* provides a default value, along with other attributes used by all parameter types. It  
2188 also provides the *id* attribute, which is used to reference the parameter in variable expressions.

2189 **4.6.5.1 BaseParameterType Property Summary**

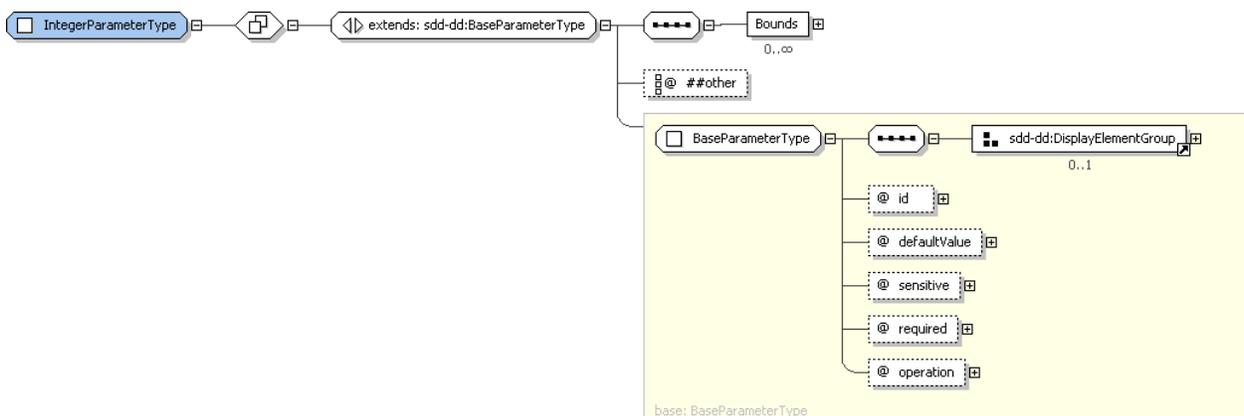
Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the parameter.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the parameter.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the parameter.
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier used for referencing the variable within the descriptor.
defaultValue	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Default value for the parameter.
sensitive	xsd:boolean	0..1	A "true" value indicates the variable contains sensitive data. **default value="false"
required	xsd:boolean	0..1	A "true" value indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided. **default value="true"
operation	OperationListType	0..1	The parameter is used when the specified operation(s) is (are) performed.

2190 **4.6.5.2 BaseParameterType Property Usage Notes**

- 2191 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2192 MUST provide a label for the parameter.  
2193 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2194 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2195 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the parameter.  
2196 These elements may be used to assist the deployer in understanding the purpose and expected  
2197 values for the parameters.  
2198 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
2199 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- 2200   ▪ **id:** Parameters may be referenced in *DeploymentDescriptor* elements of type *VariableExpression*
- 2201    within the scope of the parameter variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element
- 2202    where the variable is defined and all nested content elements. Variables defined in the top level
- 2203    content element are also visible in *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id*
- 2204    within parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.
- 2205        For example, a variable with *id* value “InstallLocation” is referenced with the string
- 2206        “\$(InstallLocation)”.
- 2207    The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 2208    log and trace messages.
- 2209    ▪ **defaultValue:** The *defaultValue* is used if no other value is provided as input to the deployment
- 2210    process.
- 2211    The value is interpreted based on the type of the defining parameter.
- 2212        For example, the *defaultValue* for a *BooleanParameter* must be either “true” or “false”; the
- 2213        *defaultValue* for a *StringParameter* must be a string; etc.
- 2214    See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2215    ▪ **sensitive:** The *sensitive* attribute provides an indication of whether the data within a variable is likely
- 2216    to be considered sensitive. User name and password are examples of data that may be considered
- 2217    sensitive.
- 2218        For example, *sensitive* data typically would not be displayed in a user interface, written to a log
- 2219        file, stored without protection, or in any way made visible except to authorized users.
- 2220    ▪ **required:** A “true” value for *required* indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided when
- 2221    the parameter is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 2222    In cases where the parameter should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for a
- 2223    particular deployment, set *required* to “false”.
- 2224    A “false” value for the *required* attribute has no effect when *defaultValue* is set.
- 2225    ▪ **operation:** This attribute enables unique parameters to be defined per operation. Note that the use of
- 2226    a parameter for a particular operation is determined by a reference to the parameter in a variable
- 2227    expression or artifact argument used when performing that operation. The operation(s) associated
- 2228    with a parameter’s use can be determined by examining its use in the SDD. The *operation* attribute
- 2229    provides a quick way to know which operation(s) will use the parameter without having to examine
- 2230    the use of the parameter.
- 2231    All parameters defined within a *CompositeInstallable* are associated with the single operation
- 2232    supported by the *CompositeInstallable*. The *operation* attribute SHOULD NOT be set in this situation.
- 2233    See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

2234    **4.6.6 IntegerParameterType**



2235  
2236    **Figure 53: IntegerParameterType structure.**

2237 *IntegerParameterType* defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for  
 2238 that parameter.

2239 **4.6.6.1 IntegerParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5].
Bounds	BoundaryType	0..*	Specifies the boundaries for the value of the parameter.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

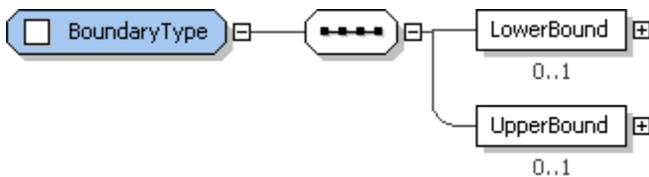
2240 **4.6.6.2 IntegerParameterType Property Usage Notes**

2241 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

- 2242 ▪ **Bounds:** If there are restrictions on the range of values that are valid for a parameter, those  
 2243 restrictions MUST be specified in *Bounds*.

2244 See the *BoundaryType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.7].

2245 **4.6.7 BoundaryType**



2246 **Figure 54: BoundaryType structure.**

2248 *BoundaryType* defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for that  
 2249 parameter.

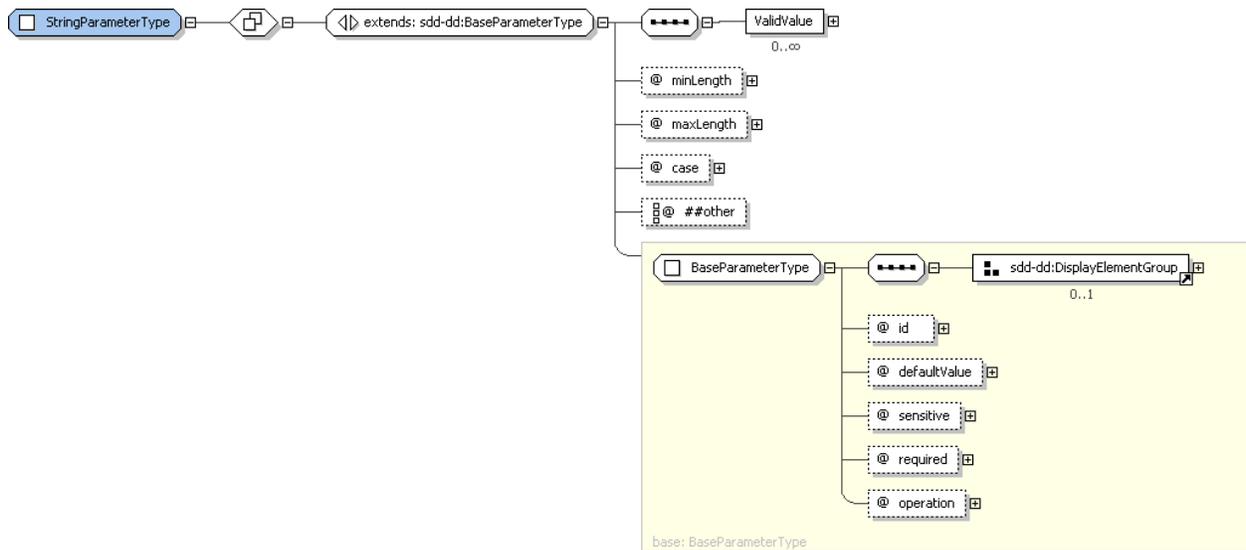
2250 **4.6.7.1 BoundaryType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
LowerBound	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Lowest valid value for the parameter.
UpperBound	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Highest valid value for the parameter.

2251 **4.6.7.2 BoundaryType Property Usage Notes**

- 2252 ▪ **LowerBound:** This variable expression MUST resolve to an integer.  
 2253 If no *LowerBound* is specified, no integer value is too low.  
 2254 A *LowerBound* of “0” restricts the integer parameter to positive integer values.  
 2255 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2256 ▪ **UpperBound:** This variable expression MUST resolve to an integer.  
 2257 If no *UpperBound* is specified, no integer value is too high.  
 2258 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

2259 **4.6.8 StringParameterType**



2260  
2261 **Figure 55: StringParameterType structure.**

2262 *StringParameterType* supports definition of minimum and maximum lengths that can be used to validate  
2263 the input received for the string parameter. It also supports definition of a list of valid input values.

2264 **4.6.8.1 StringParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5].
ValidValue	xsd:string	0..*	A string representing one valid value for the parameter.
minLength	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	Minimum length of the parameter value.
maxLength	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	Maximum length of the parameter value.
case	StringCaseType	0..1	The case of the string—"upper", "lower" or "mixed". **default value="mixed"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2265 **4.6.8.2 StringParameterType Property Usage Notes**

- 2266 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].
- 2267 ▪ **ValidValue:** Any number of valid values for the parameter can be listed using *ValidValue* elements.  
2268 When both *defaultValue* and one or more *ValidValues* are specified, *defaultValue* MUST match one  
2269 of the *ValidValues*.  
2270 *ValidValues* should be in the correct case as identified in the *case* attribute.
  - 2271 ▪ **minLength:** When no minimum length is specified, no string is too short, including an empty string.
  - 2272 ▪ **maxLength:** When no maximum length is specified, no string is too long.
  - 2273 ▪ **case:** Used when the case of the string is restricted. Defaults to *mixed* if not defined.
  - 2274 See the *StringCaseType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.6.9].

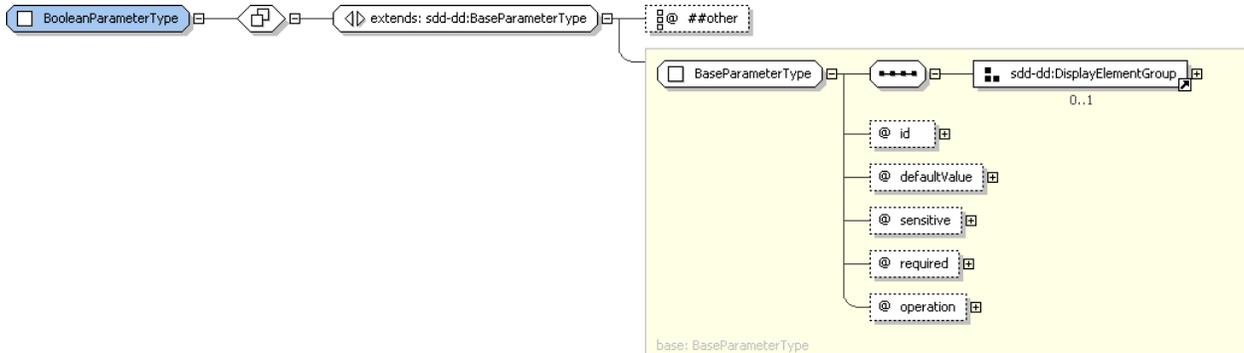
2275 **4.6.9 StringCaseType**

2276 *StringCaseType* defines the enumeration values for specifying case restrictions on a string parameter.

2277 **4.6.9.1 StringCaseType Property Usage Notes**

- 2278 ▪ **lower**: The string MUST be lower case.
- 2279 ▪ **upper**: The string MUST be upper case.
- 2280 ▪ **mixed**: The string SHOULD be mixed case.

2281 **4.6.10 BooleanParameterType**



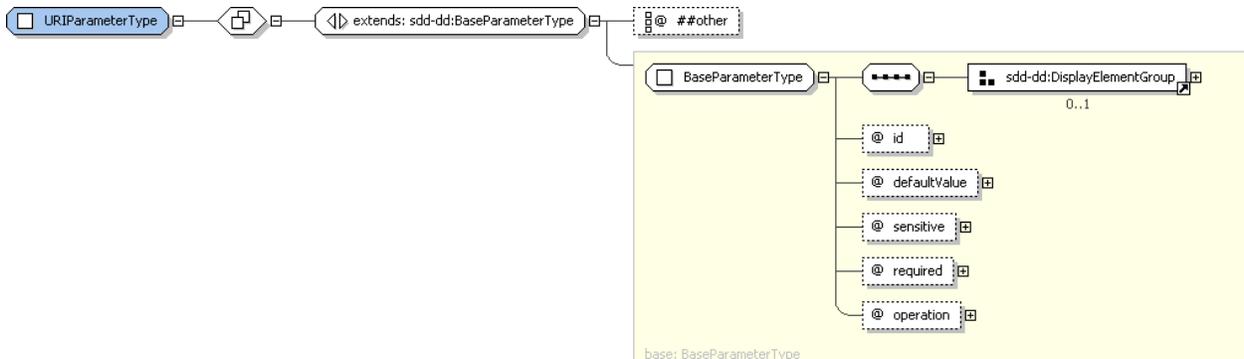
2282 **Figure 56: BooleanParameterType structure.**

2284 *BooleanParameterType* extends *BaseParameterType* without adding any additional attributes or elements. When the *defaultValue* attribute is defined for a boolean parameter, its value MUST be either “true” or “false”. See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

2288 **4.6.10.1 BooleanParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5].
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2289 **4.6.11 URIParameterType**



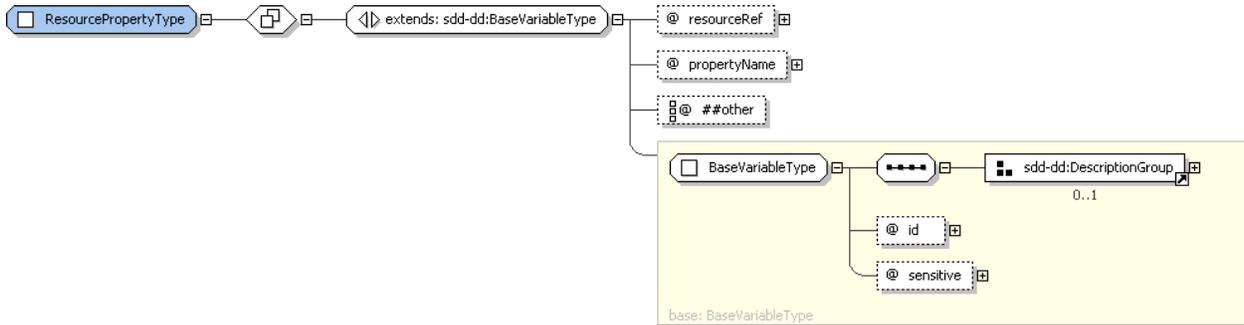
2290 **Figure 57: URIParameterType structure.**

2292 When the default value attribute is specified for a URI parameter, its value MUST be a valid Uniform Resource Identifier. See the *BaseParameterType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.5].

2295 **4.6.11.1 URIParаметerType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.5].
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2296 **4.6.12 ResourcePropertyType**



2297  
2298 **Figure 58: ResourcePropertyType structure.**

2299 *ResourcePropertyType* provides the type definition for the *ResourceProperty* element of *VariablesType*  
 2300 [4.6.3]. *ResourceProperty* is a variable whose value is set from the property of a specific instance of a  
 2301 resource during a particular solution deployment. All content elements can define *ResourceProperty*  
 2302 elements.

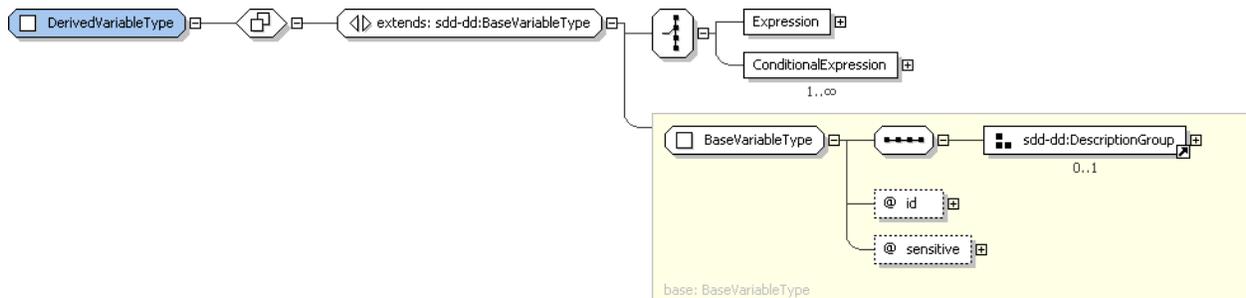
2303 **4.6.12.1 ResourcePropertyType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseVariableType		See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.2].
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The resource in Topology that owns the property.
propertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the property whose value provides the variable's values.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2304 **4.6.12.2 ResourcePropertyType Property Usage Notes**

- 2305 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].
- 2306 ▪ **resourceRef**: The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource in *Topology* that owns the  
 2307 property and will provide the value for *ResourceProperty*.
  - 2308 ▪ **propertyName**: The *propertyName* attribute identifies the name of the resource property whose value  
 2309 is to be used as the value of *ResourceProperty*.

2310 **4.6.13 DerivedVariableType**



2311  
2312 **Figure 59: DerivedVariableType structure.**

2313 A *DerivedVariable* defines a series of expressions with optional conditions. The value of the variable is  
 2314 determined by evaluating the boolean conditions and then setting the variable to the result of the top  
 2315 priority expression from the set of expressions whose conditions evaluate to true. This restriction does not  
 2316 apply to variables of the same name in different descriptors. The SDD author **MUST** create  
 2317 *DerivedVariables* in a way that makes the selection of the expression unambiguous.

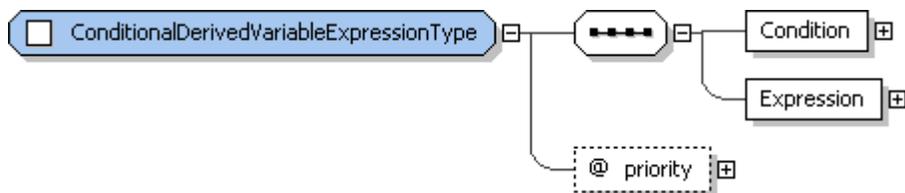
2318 **4.6.13.1 DerivedVariableType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] BaseVariableType		See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.2].
Expression	VariableExpressionType	1	An expression whose results become the value of the variable.
ConditionalExpression	ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType	1..*	An expression and an associated condition.

2319 **4.6.13.2 DerivedVariableType Property Usage Notes**

- 2320 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].
- 2321 ▪ **Expression:** When the *DerivedVariable* is used to define one variable whose value is not conditional,  
 2322 the SDD author can include one variable expression defined in one *Expression* element.  
 2323 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
  - 2324 ▪ **ConditionalExpression:** When the variable will take one of a number of possible values depending  
 2325 on the characteristics of the resources that participate in the particular deployment, then one  
 2326 *ConditionalExpression* element is defined for each value-condition pair.  
 2327 See the *ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details  
 2328 [4.6.14].

2329 **4.6.14 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType**



2330  
2331 **Figure 60: ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType structure.**

2332 *ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType* is the type of the *ConditionalExpression* elements in derived  
 2333 variables. These elements associate a condition with a variable expression.

2334

### 4.6.14.1 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Condition	ConditionType	1	A set of resource characteristics that are evaluated to determine if the associated expression is a candidate for determining the value of the derived variable.
Expression	VariableExpressionType	1	Evaluation of this expression produces a candidate value for the derived variable.
priority	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	A priority used as a tie-breaker when multiple expressions are available to determine the value of the variable. **default value="1"

2335

### 4.6.14.2 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType Property Usage Notes

2336  
2337  
2338

- **Condition:** Selection of conditioned expressions is based on the characteristics of one or more resources that participate in a particular solution deployment. These characteristics are defined in the *Condition* element.

2339

See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

2340  
2341

- **Expression:** The *Expression* element contains the expressions that evaluate to a potential value of the *DerivedVariable*. Only one expression will be selected for use in a particular solution deployment.

2342

See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

2343  
2344  
2345

- **priority:** When multiple conditions evaluate to true for a particular deployment, the expression chosen is determined by the *priority* value. A higher priority is indicated by a lower value. "1" is the highest priority.

2346

## 4.7 Requirements

2347  
2348  
2349  
2350  
2351  
2352  
2353  
2354  
2355  
2356  
2357

*Requirements* are defined by content elements. A *Requirement* consists of resource constraints that the SDD author states MUST be met prior to successful deployment or use of the software described by the SDD package. Each *Requirement* definition lists one or more deployment lifecycle operations to which the *Requirement* applies. When the *Requirement* is specified in an atomic content element, the operation associates the *Requirement* with artifacts within the atomic content element. (See the *OperationType* section for the mapping between operations and artifacts [4.3.7]. Note that the *use* operation indicates that the *Requirement* is associated with running of the software after deployment and not with content element artifacts.) When the *Requirement* is specified in a *CompositeUnit* or *CompositeInstallable*, the *operation* value MUST either be *use* or be the same top level *operation* as defined in the *CompositeInstallable* element. When the *Requirement* is specified for a *ReferencedPackage*, the *operation* associates the *Requirement* with a top level *operation* within the referenced SDD.

2358  
2359

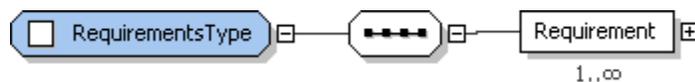
All *Requirements* specified for content elements that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST be met.

2360  
2361

When a *Requirement* can be satisfied in more than one way, *Alternatives* can be defined within a *Requirement*. A *Requirement* is considered met when any one of the *Alternatives* is satisfied.

2362

### 4.7.1 RequirementsType



2363

2364

**Figure 61: RequirementsType structure.**

2365  
2366

*RequirementsType* provides the type definition for *Requirements* in *InstallableUnit* and *LocalizationUnit* elements. It defines a list of *Requirement* elements.

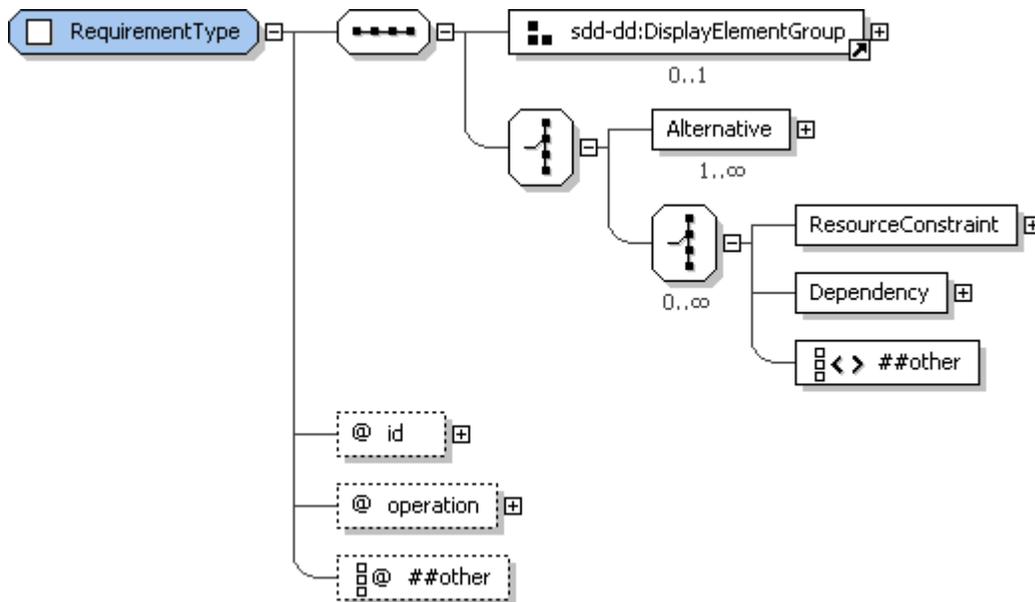
2367 **4.7.1.1 RequirementsType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Requirement	RequirementType	1..*	A requirement that must be met prior to processing the defining content element's artifacts.

2368 **4.7.1.2 RequirementsType Property Usage Notes**

- 2369 **Requirement:** The *Requirements* element contains a sequence of *Requirement* elements. The  
 2370 *Requirement* elements define requirements that **MUST** be met prior to successful processing of the  
 2371 content element's artifacts.  
 2372 See the *RequirementType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.2].

2373 **4.7.2 RequirementType**



2374  
 2375 **Figure 62: RequirementType structure.**

2376 A *Requirement* either directly defines a single set of resource constraints that **MUST** be met or defines  
 2377 one or more alternative sets of resource constraints, only one of which **MUST** be met.

2378 When multiple *Requirement* elements are declared for the same operation, all **MUST** be met prior to  
 2379 processing the associated artifact.

2380 The association is made between a requirement and an artifact via the *operation* attribute.

2381 **4.7.2.1 RequirementType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the requirement.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the requirement.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the requirement.
Alternative	AlternativeRequirementType	0..*	An alternative that can satisfy the requirement.
ResourceConstraint	RequirementResourceConstraintType	0..*	A set of constraints on one resource.

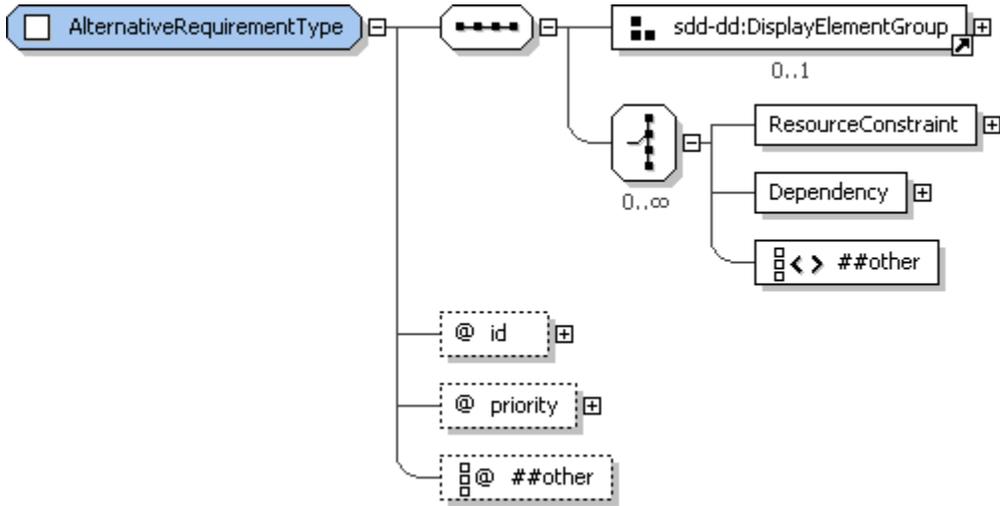
Dependency	InternalDependencyType	0..*	A dependency on another content element.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for requirement scoped to the deployment descriptor.
operation	OperationListType	1	Requirement must be met before this operation is performed.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 2382 4.7.2.2 RequirementType Property Usage Notes

- 2383   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2384   MUST provide a label for the requirement.
- 2385   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2386   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2387   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the requirement.
- 2388   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2389   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2390   ▪ **Alternative:** Alternative elements are used when a requirement can be satisfied in multiple ways.  
2391   As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, it is also possible to define a single *Alternative*.  
2392   This is semantically identical to directly defining *ResourceConstraints* under *Requirements*.
- 2393   To satisfy a requirement, at least one of the specified alternatives MUST be satisfied.
- 2394   See the *AlternativeRequirementType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.3].
- 2395   ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** When a requirement can be satisfied in only one way, constraints MAY be  
2396   defined directly under *Requirement* or in a single *Alternative* element.
- 2397   Constraints are defined using a sequence of *ResourceConstraints*. Every constraint in the sequence  
2398   MUST be met for the requirement to be met.
- 2399   See the *RequirementResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details  
2400   [4.7.5].
- 2401   ▪ **Dependency:** When one content element must be processed before another for any reason, a *pre-*  
2402   *req* type *Dependency* MUST be defined. Reasons for a pre-requisite dependency include the use of  
2403   an output variable from one artifact as an argument to another; the deployment of a resource before it  
2404   is configured; and the configuration of a resource before deployment of another resource that  
2405   depends on it.
- 2406   See the *InternalDependencyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.6].
- 2407   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2408   log and trace messages.
- 2409   ▪ **operation:** A *Requirement* is associated with application of one or more operations by setting its  
2410   *operation* attribute value to one of the enumerated values defined in *OperationListType* [4.3.6].
- 2411   If the *Requirement* is not a pre-requisite for application of an operation, but rather is required before  
2412   the resulting resources are considered usable, then the value SHOULD be set to *use*. (Note that a  
2413   completion action may also be required before a resulting resource is considered usable. See the  
2414   *CompletionType* section [4.3.14].)
- 2415   The value of *operation* for a *Requirement* defined in an atomic content element MUST be set either to  
2416   *use* or to an *operation* that is associated with an artifact element defined in the content element's  
2417   *Artifacts*. The *operation* value(s) associate the *Requirement* with one or more artifact(s).

2418 When the *Requirement* is specified in a *CompositeUnit* or *CompositeInstallable*, the *operation* value  
 2419 MUST be set either to *use* or be the same top level *operation* as defined in the *CompositeInstallable*  
 2420 element.  
 2421 There is no default value for *operation*. The SDD author must define it explicitly.  
 2422 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

2423 **4.7.3 AlternativeRequirementType**



2424  
 2425 **Figure 63: AlternativeRequirementType structure.**

2426 *AlternativeRequirementType* provides the type definition for *Alternative* elements used within  
 2427 requirements to define alternative sets of resource constraints that will satisfy the requirement.

2428 **4.7.3.1 AlternativeRequirementType Property Summary**

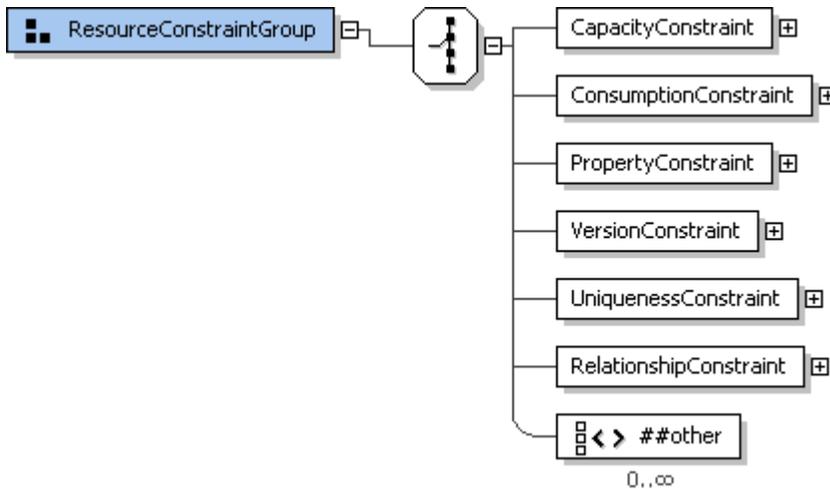
Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the alternative.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the alternative.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the alternative.
ResourceConstraint	RequirementResourceConstraintType	1..*	A set of requirements on one resource.
Dependency	InternalDependencyType	0..*	A dependency on another content element.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the alternative scoped to the deployment descriptor.
priority	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	Assists in determining alternative selected when multiple alternatives evaluate to true. **default value="1"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2429 **4.7.3.2 AlternativeRequirementType Property Usage Notes**

- 2430 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
 2431 MUST provide a label for the alternative requirement.

- 2432 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2433 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2434 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative requirement.
- 2435 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2436 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2437 ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** Every *ResourceConstraint* defined in a single *Alternative* MUST be met for the  
 2438 alternative requirement to be considered satisfied.
- 2439 See the *RequirementResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details  
 2440 [4.7.5].
- 2441 ▪ **Dependency:** When one content element must be processed before another for any reason, a *pre-*  
 2442 *req* type *Dependency* MUST be defined. Reasons for a pre-requisite dependency include the use of  
 2443 an output variable from one artifact as an argument to another; the deployment of a resource before it  
 2444 is configured; and the configuration of a resource before deployment of another resource that  
 2445 depends on it.
- 2446 See the *InternalDependencyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.6].
- 2447 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 2448 log and trace messages.
- 2449 ▪ **priority:** If there are multiple satisfied alternatives during a particular solution deployment, one of the  
 2450 alternatives must be selected. The *priority* attribute communicates the SDD author's prioritization of  
 2451 the alternatives. A lower number represents a higher priority with "1" representing the highest priority.  
 2452 Other inputs may also be used to select an alternative. The criteria for making this selection are  
 2453 outside of the scope of the SDD.

2454 **4.7.4 ResourceConstraintGroup**



2455  
 2456 **Figure 64: ResourceConstraintGroup structure.**

2457 The elements of *ResourceConstraintGroup* are used when defining content element requirements on  
 2458 resources. The *ResourceConstraint* element is used to group one or more constraints on a single  
 2459 resource.

2460 **4.7.4.1 ResourceConstraintGroup Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
CapacityConstraint	CapacityConstraintType	0..1	A bound on a quantifiable property of a resource.
ConsumptionConstraint	ConsumptionConstraintType	0..1	A required quantity of a property of a resource in any state.

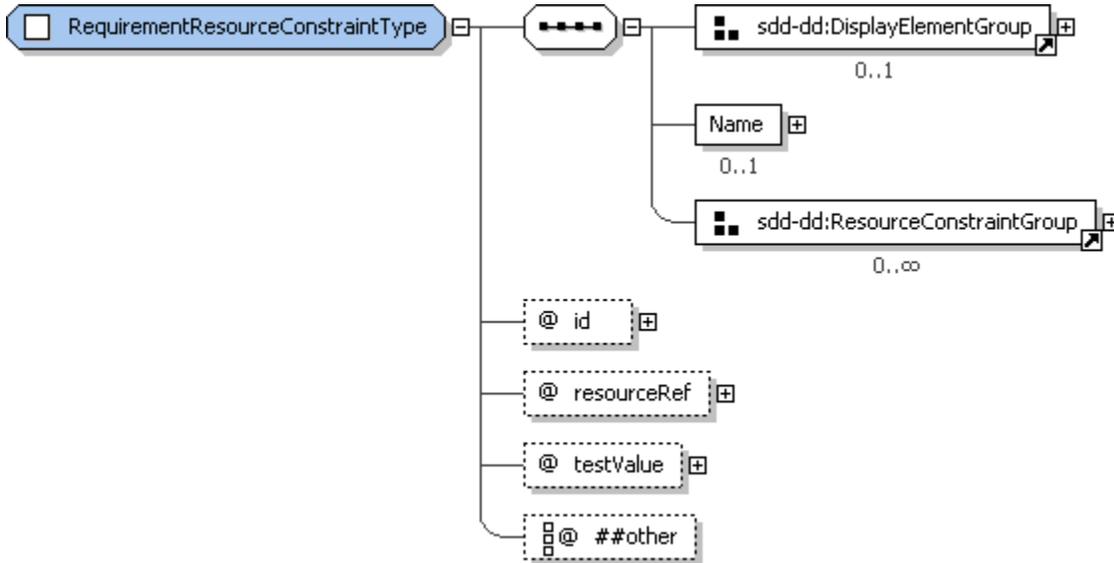
PropertyConstraint	PropertyConstraintType	0..1	A required value or set of values of a property.
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintType	0..1	A required value or set of values of a version property.
UniquenessConstraint	UniquenessConstraintType	0..1	A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.
RelationshipConstraint	RelationshipConstraintType	0..1	A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.
	xsd:any	0..*	

#### 2461 4.7.4.2 ResourceConstraintGroup Property Usage Notes

- 2462   ▪ **CapacityConstraint:** *CapacityConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to express  
2463 constraints on the available capacity of a particular property of a particular resource.
- 2464    A *CapacityConstraint* tests a numeric value representing a bound on a quantifiable property of a  
2465 resource, such as processor speed. The test may be for a lower (minimum) or upper (maximum)  
2466 bound. This constraint differs from a *ConsumptionConstraint* in that it is comparative, not cumulative.
- 2467    When multiple *CapacityConstraint* elements are defined by content elements participating in a  
2468 particular solution deployment apply to the same property of the same resource, the most restrictive  
2469 constraint applies.
- 2470    See the *CapacityConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.1].
- 2471   ▪ **ConsumptionConstraint:** *ConsumptionConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to  
2472 express constraints on the quantity of a particular property of a specific resource that is available for  
2473 consumption.
- 2474    A *ConsumptionConstraint* defines a required quantity of a consumable resource property. The  
2475 *ConsumptionConstraint* is cumulative rather than comparative.
- 2476        An example of a consumable resource property is the disk space property of a file system  
2477 resource.
- 2478    When multiple *ConsumptionConstraint* elements are defined for the same resource by content  
2479 elements participating in a particular solution deployment, the sum of all the expressed consumption  
2480 constraints must be met by the resource.
- 2481    See the *ConsumptionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.3].
- 2482   ▪ **PropertyConstraint:** *PropertyConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to indicate that  
2483 specific resource properties must have a specific value or set of values.
- 2484    See the *PropertyConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.5].
- 2485   ▪ **VersionConstraint:** *VersionConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to express a  
2486 constraint on the version of a specific resource.
- 2487    A *VersionConstraint* defines a required resource version or a range of versions. It MAY include a  
2488 certified version or range of versions representing a more restrictive set of versions whose use carries  
2489 a higher degree of confidence.
- 2490    Version formats and comparison rules vary greatly. The SDD does not provide information on how to  
2491 interpret version strings.
- 2492    See the *VersionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.7].
- 2493   ▪ **UniquenessConstraint:** *UniquenessConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to  
2494 indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource  
2495 instance during a particular deployment.
- 2496    See the *UniquenessConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.12].
- 2497   ▪ **RelationshipConstraint:** *RelationshipConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to  
2498 indicate a constraint on a particular relationship between resources.

2499 See the *RelationshipConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.13].

2500 **4.7.5 RequirementResourceConstraintType**



2501 **Figure 65: RequirementResourceConstraintType structure.**

2502 *ResourceConstraintType* provides the Type section for the *ResourceConstraint* element in content  
 2503 element *Requirements*. A *ResourceConstraint* is a set of zero or more constraints on one resource.  
 2504

2505 **4.7.5.1 RequirementResourceConstraintType Property Summary**

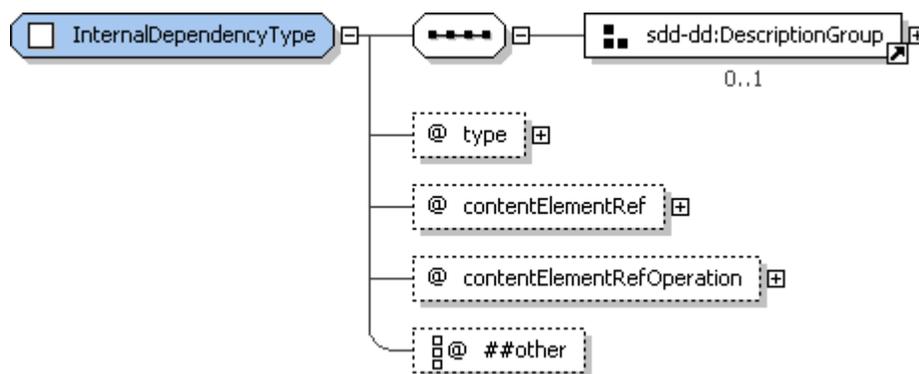
Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name for the resource constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the resource constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the resource constraint.
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	The name of the resource.
CapacityConstraint	CapacityConstraintType	0..1	A capacity constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
ConsumptionConstraint	ConsumptionConstraintType	0..1	A consumption constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
PropertyConstraint	PropertyConstraintType	0..1	A property constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintType	0..1	A version constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
UniquenessConstraint	UniquenessConstraintType	0..1	A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.
RelationshipConstraint	RelationshipConstraintType	0..1	A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the ResourceConstraint scoped to the

			deployment descriptor.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a resource specification in topology.
testValue	xsd:boolean	0..1	Indicates whether the ResourceConstraint must evaluate to true or to false. **default value="true".
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 2506 4.7.5.2 RequirementResourceConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- 2507
- 2508
- 2509 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the resource constraint.  
See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - 2510 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2511 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the resource constraint.  
2512 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
2513 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - 2514 ▪ **Name:** This name is used to identify the resource in the deployment environment. If the resource  
2515 identified by *resourceRef* does not have the name defined here, then the constraint is not met.  
2516 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
  - 2517 ▪ **CapacityConstraint, ConsumptionConstraint, PropertyConstraint, VersionConstraint,**  
2518 **UniquenessConstraint, RelationshipConstraint:** See the *ResourceConstraintGroup* section for  
2519 structure and additional usage of the individual constraints [4.7.4].
  - 2520 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2521 log and trace messages.
  - 2522 ▪ **resourceRef:** This is the resource to which the constraints apply.  
2523 This reference MUST refer to the *id* of a resource in *Topology*.
  - 2524 ▪ **testValue:** When the result of evaluating *Name* and all of the constraints defined in the  
2525 *ResourceConstraint* matches the value of *testValue*, the *ResourceConstraint* is considered met.  
2526 When no *Name* or constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "true", the constraint is met if the resource  
2527 exists as defined in topology.  
2528 When no *Name* or constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "false", the constraint is met if the  
2529 resource, as defined in topology, does not exist.

#### 2530 4.7.6 InternalDependencyType



2531  
2532 **Figure 66: InternalDependencyType structure.**

2533 *InternalDependencyType* provides the type definition for *Dependency* elements defined in all types of  
 2534 content elements. *Dependency* elements allow the expression of dependence on the application of a  
 2535 particular operation to a content element defined in the deployment descriptor before application of a  
 2536 particular operation on the defining content element. The dependency is associated with an operation on  
 2537 the defining content element by the operation attribute in the *Requirement* defining the *Dependency*  
 2538 element. The dependency is associated with an operation on the depended on content element by the  
 2539 *contentRefOperation* attribute in the *Dependency*. There are three types of dependencies: pre-requisites,  
 2540 co-requisites and ex-requisites.

2541 **4.7.6.1 InternalDependencyType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-understandable description of the dependency.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short human-understandable description of the dependency.
type	DependencyType	0..1	Type can be "pre-req", "co-req", or "ex-req". **default value="pre-req"
contentElementRef	xsd:IDREF	1	A reference to the content element which is depended on.
contentElementRefOperation	OperationListType	0..1	The dependency is on application of this operation to the content element identified in contentRef.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2542 **4.7.6.2 InternalDependencyType Property Usage Notes**

- 2543 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2544 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the dependency.  
 2545 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2546 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2547 ▪ **type:** See the *DependencyType* section for an explanation of the semantics of each of the possible  
 2548 dependency types [4.7.7].
- 2549 ▪ **contentElementRef:** The *contentElementRef* value is the *id* of the content element that is depended  
 2550 on.  
 2551 The value MUST reference the *id* of a content element.
- 2552 ▪ **contentElementRefOperation:** When the depended-on content element is an atomic content  
 2553 element, the operation defined here effectively identifies the artifact that must be processed for a pre-  
 2554 requisite or co-requisite or not processed for an ex-requisite.  
 2555 When the depended-on content element is a *CompositeUnit*, the operation defined in  
 2556 *contentElementRefOperation* MUST be the top level operation defined by the containing  
 2557 *CompositeInstallable*.  
 2558 See the *OperationListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.6].

2559 **4.7.7 DependencyType**

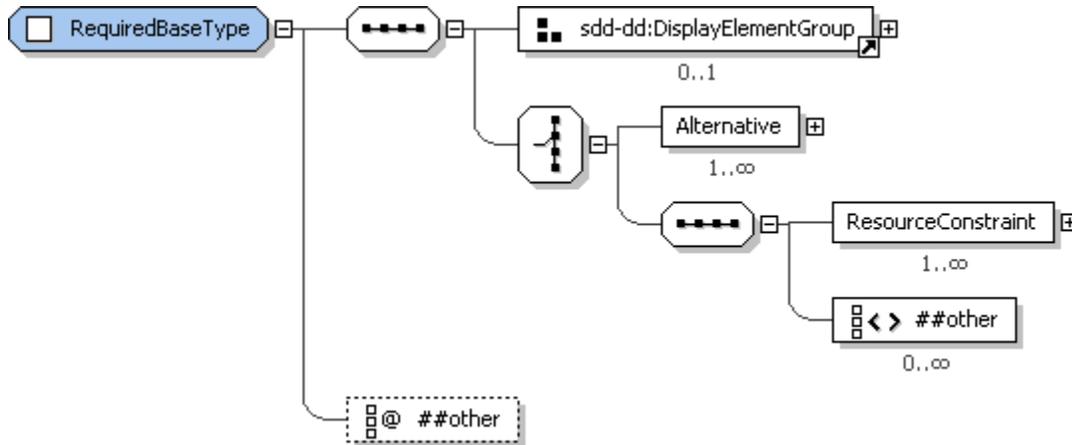
2560 The *DependencyType* enumeration provides the value for the *type* attribute in *Dependency* elements.

2561 **4.7.7.1 DependencyType Property Usage Notes**

- 2562 ▪ **pre-req:** A *pre-req* dependency is satisfied if the other content element is in scope for the  
 2563 deployment. The *pre-req* indicates that the other content element MUST be processed before the  
 2564 content element that defines the *pre-req*.

- 2565 The dependency is not met if the other content element is not in scope.
- 2566 ▪ **co-req**: A *co-req* dependency is satisfied if the other content element is in scope for the deployment. There is no dependence on order of processing.
- 2567
- 2568 The dependency is not met if the other content element is not in scope.
- 2569 ▪ **ex-req**: An *ex-req* dependency indicates that the other content element MUST NOT be in scope.
- 2570 The dependency is not met if the other content element is in scope.

2571 **4.7.8 RequiredBaseType**



2572  
2573 **Figure 67: RequiredBaseType structure.**

2574 *RequiredBaseType* provides the type definition for the *RequiredBase* element of *InstallableUnit* and  
2575 *LocalizationUnit* elements and the *LocalizationBase* element of *LocalizationUnits*. These elements  
2576 declare the identity characteristics of one or more resources that will be modified or localized by applying  
2577 of the content element's artifacts. Definition of a *RequiredBase* element represents a requirement that a  
2578 resource matching the declared characteristic exists. Definition of a *LocalizationBase* element represents  
2579 a condition on the existence of a resource that matches the declared characteristics.

2580 **4.7.8.1 RequiredBaseType Property Summary**

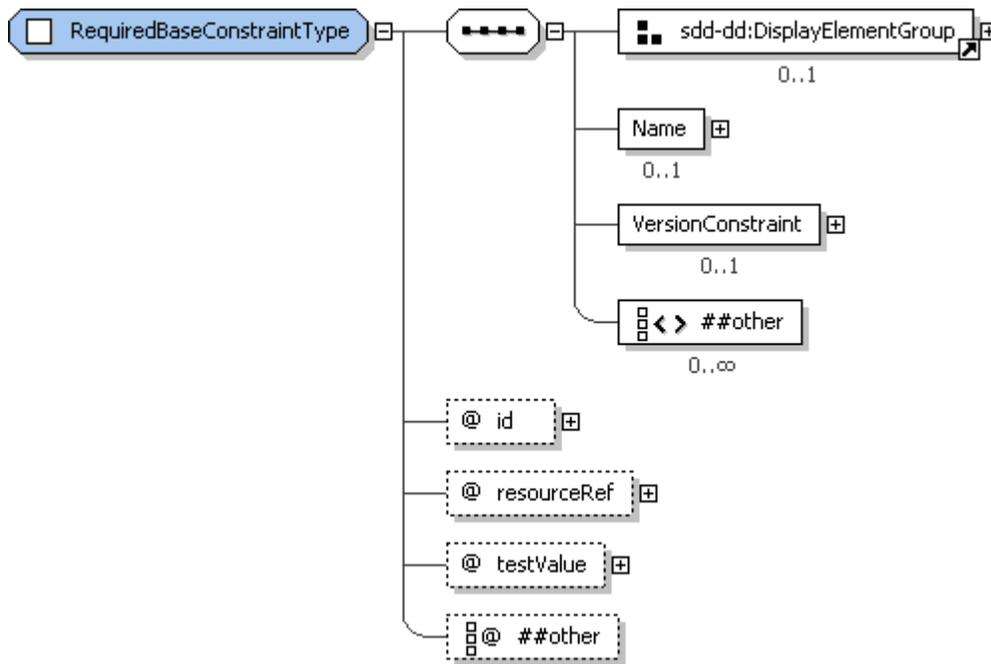
Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Display name for the requirement on a resource to serve as the base of an update or localization.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the requirement. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the requirement.
Alternative	AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType	0..*	Alternative set of constraints on a required base resource.
ResourceConstraint	RequiredBaseConstraintType	1..*	Constraints on the required base resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2581 **4.7.8.2 RequiredBaseType Property Usage Notes**

- 2582 ▪ **DisplayName**: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2583 MUST provide a label for the required base element.

- 2584 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2585 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
- 2586 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the required base for this content element.
- 2587 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2588 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2589 ▪ **Alternative:** When more than one resource can be used as the update or localization base, two or
- 2590 more *Alternative* elements are defined to describe the choices. As a convenience for tooling that
- 2591 produces SDDs, a single *Alternative* can be defined in place of a *ResourceConstraint*.
- 2592 See the *AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details
- 2593 [4.7.10].
- 2594 ▪ **ResourceConstraint:** *ResourceConstraints* defined here identify one or more particular resources
- 2595 that can serve as the update or localization base. If *ResourceConstraints* are defined for multiple
- 2596 resources, they are all updated or localized by application of the content element.
- 2597 See the *RequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.9].

2598 **4.7.9 RequiredBaseConstraintType**



2599 **Figure 68: RequiredBaseConstraintType structure.**

2600 *RequiredBaseConstraintType* provides the type definition for the *ResourceConstraint* elements used in

2601 *RequiredBase* and *LocalizationBase* elements. A required base definition differs from a requirement

2602 definition in the limited nature of the constraints that can be specified. The purpose of constraints within a

2603 required base is to identify resource instances that can be correctly updated or localized by the content

2604 element. Only constraints related to the basic identity characteristics of the resource are allowed.

2605

2606 **4.7.9.1 RequiredBaseConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the constraint.

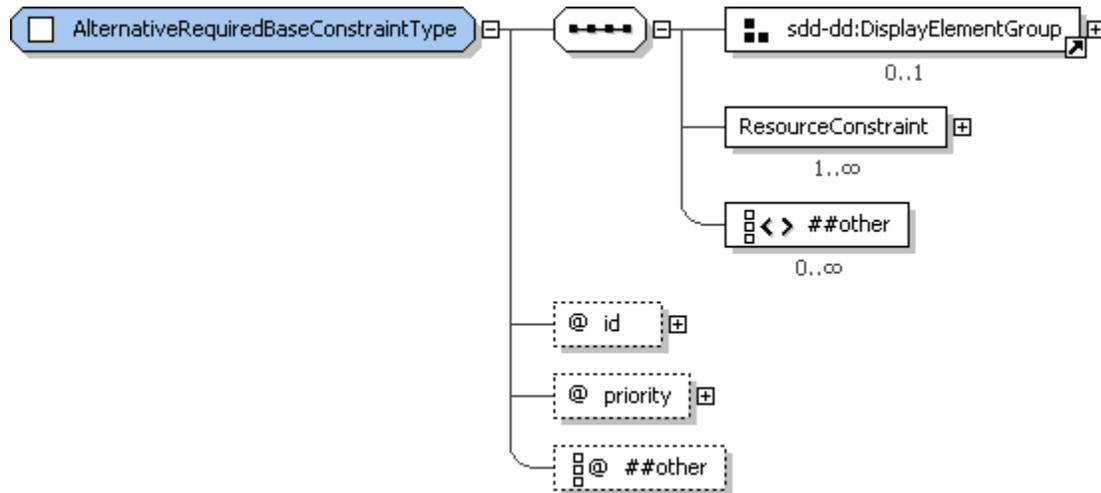
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Name of the required base resource as understood in the deployment environment.
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintType	0..1	Allowed versions for the required base resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Constraint identifier scoped to the deployment descriptor.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource representing the required base for an update operation.
testValue	xsd:boolean	0..1	Defines the desired result of the required base constraint **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 2607 4.7.9.2 RequiredBaseConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- 2608   ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
2609   MUST provide a label for the constraint.
- 2610   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2611   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
2612   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the constraint on the required base.  
2613   The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
2614   See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2615   ▪ **Name:** The *Name* element provides the name by which the resource is known in the deployment  
2616   environment. The value of *Name* is compared to resource names found in the deployment  
2617   environment as part of constraint evaluation.  
2618   If the resource name is declared in the referenced resource definition, it SHOULD NOT be declared  
2619   here. If the resource name is changed by application of the update, the original name SHOULD be  
2620   declared here and the updated name SHOULD be declared in *ResultingResource*. The name  
2621   declared here is always the one that represents the required value for the required base.  
2622   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2623   ▪ **VersionConstraint:** The *VersionConstraint* element defines the set of versions that can serve as a  
2624   base for the update.  
2625   See the *VersionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.7].
- 2626   ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
2627   log and trace messages.
- 2628   ▪ **resourceRef:** The *resourceRef* attribute value MUST reference the *id* of the resource element in  
2629   *Topology* to which this constraint refers.
- 2630   ▪ **testValue:** The required base constraint is met when the boolean result of comparing the declared  
2631   name and/or version to the actual name and/or version is equal to the boolean value specified in  
2632   *testValue*.  
2633   Because the purpose of a required base constraint is to positively identify one or more resources that  
2634   can serve as the base for an update or localization, there MUST always be one *ResourceConstraint*  
2635   that has *testValue* set to "true".  
2636   Additional *ResourceConstraints* can be defined with *testValue* set to "false". These constraints  
2637   identify characteristics of the same required base resource that must not be true for that resource to  
2638   serve as the base.

2639

## 4.7.10 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType



2640

2641

**Figure 69: AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType structure.**

2642

*AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType* provides the type definition for the *Alternative* elements used in *RequiredBase* and *LocalizationBase* elements.

2643

2644

### 4.7.10.1 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	Name of the constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the constraint.
ResourceConstraint	RequiredBaseConstraintType	1..*	A set of requirements on one resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Constraint identifier scoped to the deployment descriptor.
priority	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	Assists in determining alternative selected when multiple alternatives evaluate to true. **default value="1"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2645

### 4.7.10.2 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType Property Usage Notes

2646

- **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the alternative.

2647

See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

2648

2649

- **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative.

2650

The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

2651

See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

2652

2653

- **ResourceConstraint:** *ResourceConstraints* defined here identify one or more particular resources that can serve as the update or localization base. If *ResourceConstraints* are defined for multiple resources, they are all updated or localized by application of the content element.

2654

2655

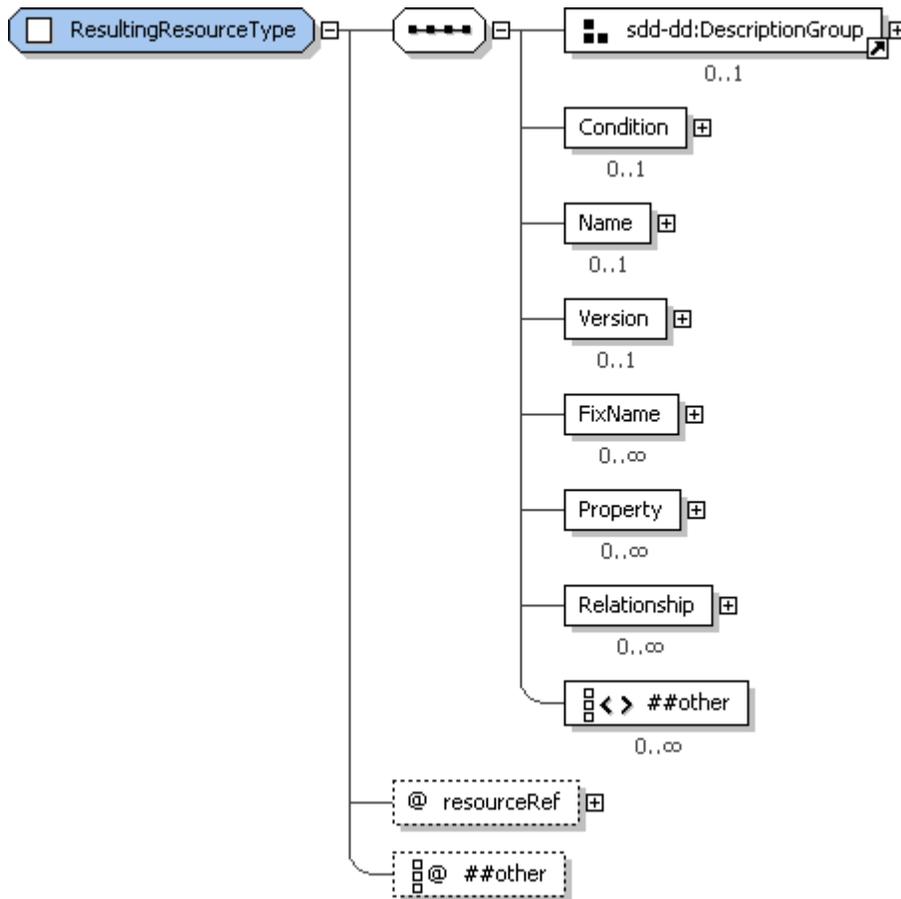
- 2656 See the *RequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.9].
- 2657
  - **id**: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
  - 2658 log and trace messages.
  - 2659
    - **priority**: If there are multiple satisfied alternatives during a particular solution deployment, one of the
    - 2660 alternatives must be selected. The *priority* attribute communicates the SDD author's prioritization of
    - 2661 the alternatives. A lower number represents a higher priority with "1" representing the highest priority.
    - 2662 Other inputs may also be used to select an alternative. The criteria for making this selection are
    - 2663 outside of the scope of the SDD.

## 2664 4.8 Resulting and Changed Resources

2665 Deployment of an SDD package creates or modifies software resources. These resources are included in  
 2666 the *Topology* definition and described in more detail in *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange*  
 2667 elements.

2668 The SDD author can choose to model resulting and modified resources at a very granular level, at a very  
 2669 coarse level; at any level in between, or not at all. An example of modeling resulting resources at a  
 2670 granular level would be modeling every file created by the deployment as a resulting resource. An  
 2671 example of modeling resulting resources at a very coarse level would be modeling the software product  
 2672 created by deployment as a single resulting resource. The choice depends on the needs of the solution  
 2673 deployment. If a resource is not modeled in the SDD, no requirements can be expressed on it, no  
 2674 conditions can be based on it and no variables can be set from values of its properties. It cannot play any  
 2675 of the roles described for resources in the *ResourceType* section of this document [4.2.2].

### 2676 4.8.1 ResultingResourceType



2677  
 2678 **Figure 70: ResultingResourceType structure.**

2679 *InstallableUnit* and *LocalizationUnit* content elements can include zero or more *ResultingResource*  
 2680 elements that describe the key resources installed or updated when the content element's artifacts are  
 2681 processed. The type definition for these elements is provided by *ResultingResourceType*.  
 2682 *ResultingResource* elements refer to resources in topology and define characteristics of those resources  
 2683 that will become true when the artifact is applied. The deployment descriptor author MAY omit the  
 2684 *ResultingResource* element from the content element and the definition of the resource from *Topology*  
 2685 when no knowledge of their existence is required for deployment of the solution or for aggregation of the  
 2686 solution. Characteristics that exist in *ResultingResource* and elsewhere, such as *Topology* or  
 2687 *ResultingChange*, MUST NOT conflict.

2688 For example, if *Topology* specifies a property that indicates that a file must be writable, it would be  
 2689 incorrect for *ResultingResource* to specify that the resulting file resource is read-only.

2690 Example uses of the *ResultingResource* element are to:

- 2691 • determine whether potentially resulting resources will actually be installed or updated;
- 2692 • identify the resource associated with a content element that may be subsequently uninstalled  
 2693 using the uninstall information in this SDD;
- 2694 • discover the components of a logical solution resource previously installed using this SDD;
- 2695 • check whether or not a content element has already been installed.

2696 **4.8.1.1 ResultingResourceType Property Summary**

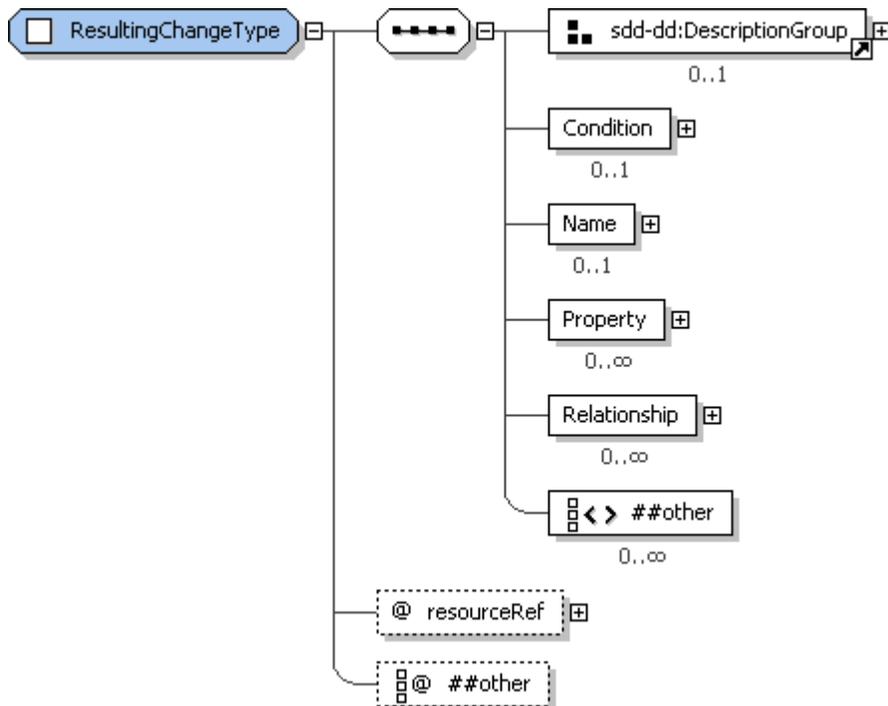
Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the effect of the content element on the resulting resource.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the effect of the content element on the resulting resource.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the resulting resource definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Name of the resulting resource as known in the deployment environment.
Version	VersionType	0..1	Version of the resulting resource.
FixName	xsd:string	0..*	Name of a resulting fix.
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0..*	A resulting property setting of the resulting resource.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0..*	A relationship that will exist after creating or updating the resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a resource in topology.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2697 **4.8.1.2 ResultingResourceType Property Usage Notes**

- 2698 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2699 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the effect of the content element on the  
 2700 resulting resource.  
 2701 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2702 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2703 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resulting resource will be created by the content element  
 2704 only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.  
 2705 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

- 2706   ▪ **Name:** The name of the resulting resource SHOULD be defined in the *ResultingResource* element  
2707   and not in *Topology* when the content element installs the resulting resource. The resource name  
2708   comes into existence when the resulting resource is created. When the content element updates the  
2709   resulting resource without changing the resource name, *Name* SHOULD be defined in *Topology*.  
2710   *Name* SHOULD NOT be defined in both places. If a resource name is defined in both *Topology* and  
2711   *ResultingResource*, the values MUST match.
- 2712   See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2713   ▪ **Version:** This is the version of the resource after processing the content element's artifacts. *Version*  
2714   SHOULD be defined for all resulting resources.
- 2715       For example, when update artifacts are processed, this version describes the resource after the  
2716       update is complete.
- 2717   See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- 2718   ▪ **FixName:** Multiple *FixName* elements MAY be included to identify the resulting resource fixes that  
2719   will exist once the content element is applied. The *FixName* SHOULD match the names of fixes that  
2720   can be detected on the system.
- 2721   ▪ **Property:** *Property* elements SHOULD be included to identify property values of the resulting  
2722   resource that will exist after applying the content element.
- 2723   Properties of the resulting resource SHOULD be defined in the *ResultingResource* element and not in  
2724   *Topology*. They SHOULD NOT be defined in both places. If a property is defined in both *Topology*  
2725   and *ResultingResource*, the values MUST match.
- 2726   See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- 2727   ▪ **Relationship:** *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships that will exist after  
2728   applying the content element.
- 2729   See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].
- 2730   ▪ **resourceRef:** The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource in *Topology* that will be installed  
2731   or updated when the defining content element is applied.

2732   **4.8.2 ResultingChangeType**



2733   **Figure 71: ResultingChangeType structure.**  
2734

2735 *InstallableUnit* and *ConfigurationUnit* content elements can include zero or more *ResultingChange*  
 2736 elements that describe the key resources whose configuration is modified when the content element's  
 2737 artifacts are processed. *ResultingChange* elements refer to resources in *Topology* and define  
 2738 characteristics of those resources that will become true when the content element is applied.

2739 **4.8.2.1 ResultingChangeType Property Summary**

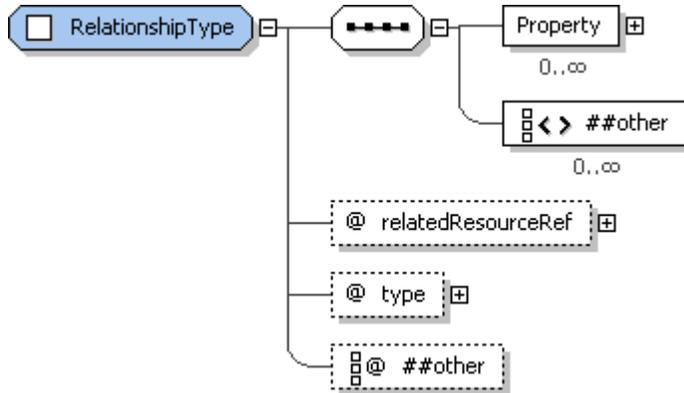
Name	Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	Description of the effect of the content element on the changing resource.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	Short description of the effect of the content element on the changing resource.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the resulting change definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	Name of the resulting resource as known in the deployment environment.
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0..*	A resulting property setting of the changing resource.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0..*	Specifies a relationship(s) with another resource that will result from this deployment.
	xsd:any	0..*	
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource in topology that will be changed by application of the content element.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2740 **4.8.2.2 ResultingChangeType Property Usage Notes**

- 2741 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 2742 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the effect of the content element on the  
 2743 changing resource.  
 2744 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
 2745 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 2746 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resulting change will be performed by applying the content  
 2747 element only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.  
 2748 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 2749 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* corresponds with the name of the changed resource as known in the deployment  
 2750 environment. *Name* SHOULD be defined in *Topology* and not in *ResultingChange*, because the name  
 2751 is not changed by processing the content elements artifacts. If *Name* is defined in both places, the  
 2752 values MUST match.  
 2753 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2754 ▪ **Property:** *Property* elements MAY be included to identify property values of the identified resource as  
 2755 they will exist after applying the content element.  
 2756 Properties defined in *ResultingChange* MUST be properties that are modified by processing the  
 2757 content element's artifacts.  
 2758 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- 2759 ▪ **Relationship:** When application of the content element results in the creation or modification of  
 2760 relationships, the *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships as they will  
 2761 exist after application of the content element.  
 2762 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

- 2763 ▪ **resourceRef**: The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource whose configuration will be  
2764 modified when the defining content element is applied.  
2765 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource specified in *Topology*.

2766 **4.8.3 RelationshipType**



2767  
2768 **Figure 72: RelationshipType structure.**

2769 **4.8.3.1 RelationshipType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Property	PropertyType	0..*	A property definition that further constrains the relationship.
	xsd:any	0..*	
relatedResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The second resource in the relationship.
type	xsd:QName	1	The type of the relationship.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

2770 **4.8.3.2 RelationshipType Property Usage Notes**

- 2771 ▪ **Property**: This element MAY be used to provide additional information about the relationship.  
2772 For example, a connectivity relationship might specify additional information such as the specific  
2773 protocol used (for instance, TCP/IP) and/or particular characteristics of a protocol (for instance,  
2774 port number).  
2775 See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].
- 2776 ▪ **relatedResourceRef**: There are two resources in any relationship. The first is the resource defined in  
2777 the *resourceRef* of the *ResultingResource* or *RelationshipConstraint* element that defines the  
2778 *Relationship* element. The second resource is the one identified by *relatedResourceRef*.  
2779 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource specified in *Topology*.
- 2780 ▪ **type**: Values for relationship type are not defined by the SDD specification. This type may be  
2781 specified in profiles [5.3].

2782 **4.9 Composite Content Elements**

2783 Composite content elements organize the content of an SDD but do not define artifacts used to deploy  
2784 SDD content. There are three types of composite content elements: *CompositeInstallable*, *CompositeUnit*  
2785 and *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.

2786 *CompositeInstallable* is used any time that more than one content element is defined in support of one  
2787 operation on the package; any time aggregation of SDDs is needed or any time the package includes  
2788 selectable content.

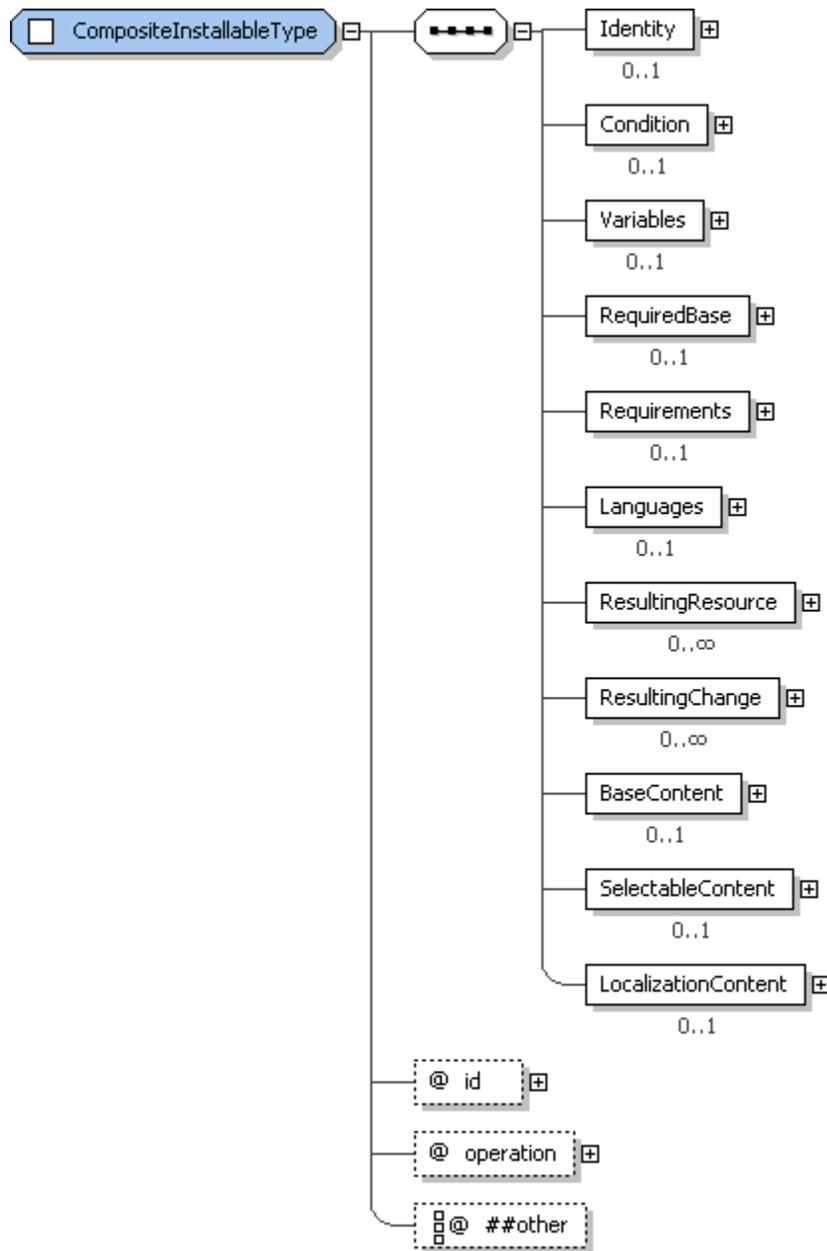
2789 *CompositeInstallable* is the root of a content hierarchy that supports a single deployment lifecycle  
2790 operation. It can define a base content hierarchy, a localization content hierarchy, and/or a selectable  
2791 content hierarchy and selection criteria. Base content defines content that is deployed by default.  
2792 Selectable content defines content that can be selected or not by the deployer. Localization content  
2793 defines content that provides language support. One SDD can have more than one  
2794 *CompositeInstallable*—each supporting a different operation.

2795 *CompositeUnit* is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content hierarchies.  
2796 *CompositeUnits* can define *InstallableUnits*, *ConfigurationUnits*, *ContainedPackages* and other  
2797 *CompositeUnits*. Requirements, conditions and variables that are common to all content elements defined  
2798 by the *CompositeUnit* can be defined on the *CompositeUnit* to avoid repetition. Within the selectable  
2799 content hierarchy, a *CompositeUnit* can provide an efficient means for selection of a set of related content  
2800 elements by a *Feature*.

2801 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is described in the Localization section [4.13].

2802

## 4.9.1 CompositeInstallableType



2803

2804

**Figure 73: CompositeInstallableType structure.**

2805

2806

2807

2808

A *CompositeInstallable* supports the definition of metadata about package content for one deployment lifecycle operation. One *CompositeInstallable* can be defined for each operation supported by the software package. When more than one *CompositeInstallable* is defined in an SDD, there MUST NOT be more than one *CompositeInstallable* in scope for a particular deployment defined for any one operation.

2809

### 4.9.1.1 CompositeInstallableType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	0..1	Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeInstallable.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the content of the

			CompositeInstallable is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	0..1	Variables for use anywhere below the CompositeInstallable and in Topology.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	0..1	Resource or resources that can be updated by the CompositeInstallable.
Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Requirements that must be met before successful application of the CompositeInstallable.
Languages	LanguageSelectionsType	0..1	Defines required and selectable languages and groups of languages.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0..*	Resources that result from applying the CompositeInstallable.
ResultingChange	ResultingChangeType	0..*	Configuration changes that result from applying the CompositeInstallable.
BaseContent	BaseContentType	0..1	Defines content describing the deployment of core resources.
SelectableContent	SelectableContentType	0..1	Defines content describing the deployment of selectable resources.
LocalizationContent	LocalizationContentType	0..1	Defines content whose sole purpose is to provide language support.
id	xsd:ID	1	A unique identifier for the CompositeInstallable element.
operation	OperationType	1	The deployment lifecycle operation described by the CompositeInstallable definition.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

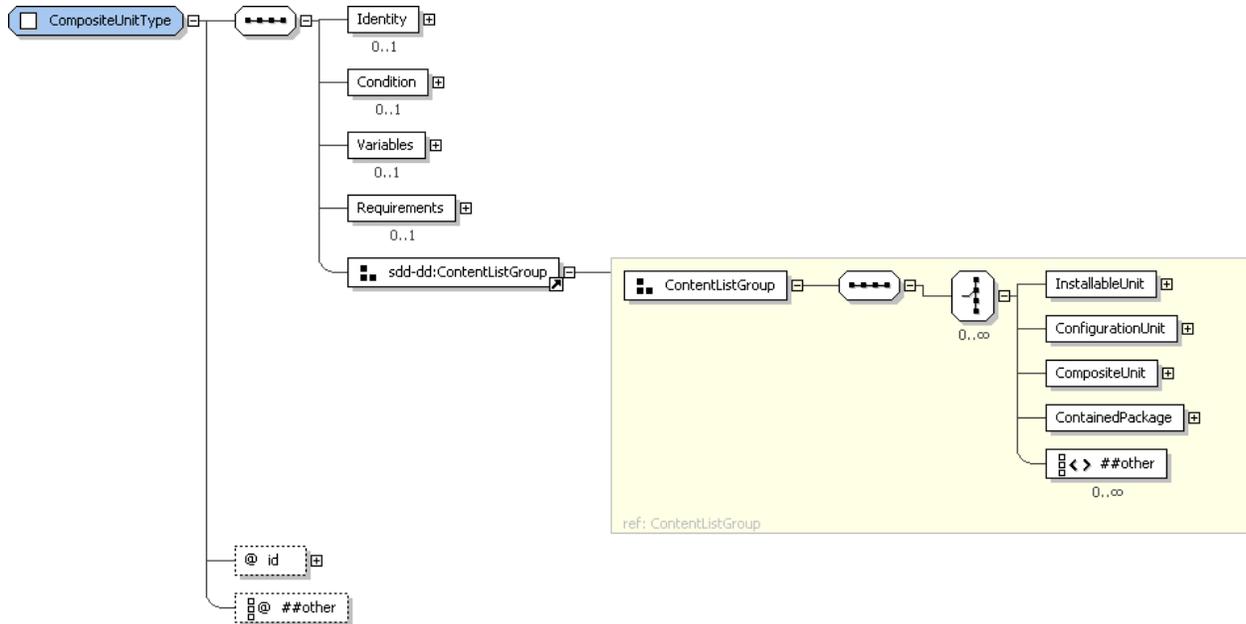
#### 2810 4.9.1.2 CompositeInstallableType Property Usage Notes

- 2811   ▪ **Identity:** This identity MAY have values in common with the identity of a resulting resource created  
2812   when artifacts defined by content of the composite are processed.
- 2813   If the unit of packaging described by the *CompositeInstallable* is known to a package management  
2814   system, the *Identity* elements SHOULD correspond to values associated with that package in the  
2815   package management system.
- 2816   See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 2817   ▪ **Condition:** When the condition defined in the *CompositeInstallable* is not met for a particular  
2818   deployment, the *CompositeUnit* and all the content elements defined below the *CompositeUnit* are  
2819   out of scope for that particular deployment.
- 2820   See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 2821   ▪ **Variables:** Variables defined here are visible throughout the *CompositeInstallable* and in *Topology*.  
2822   See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
- 2823   ▪ **RequiredBase:** When a resource or resources corresponding to the overall software will be modified  
2824   during deployment, that resource or those resources MAY be defined in the *RequiredBase* element.  
2825   The *RequiredBase* definition represents a requirement that the described resource be available for  
2826   modification to apply the single *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. When *RequiredBase*  
2827   is defined, the *operation* defined by *CompositeInstallable* MUST be one of the following: *update*,  
2828   *undo*, *uninstall*, or *repair*. By specifying the required base separately from other requirements, it is  
2829   possible for consumers of the SDD to easily determine if the base is available before processing  
2830   other requirements.
- 2831   See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

- 2832   ▪ **Requirements:** These are requirements that must be met regardless of what content is selected for  
2833 deployment and which conditions within the content hierarchy evaluates to true.
- 2834   Requirements that apply only to a portion of the content SHOULD be defined at the point in the  
2835 content hierarchy where they apply.
- 2836   All requirements specified on content elements that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST  
2837 be met. This represents a logical “AND” of the requirements. Care should be taken by the SDD author  
2838 to ensure that conflicting requirements cannot be in scope for the same deployment.
- 2839   See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 2840   ▪ **Languages:** When the SDD contains language support, the *Languages* element can be defined to  
2841 describe the languages supported; which languages are required and which are selectable; and how  
2842 language selections are grouped.
- 2843   Languages defined in the *Mandatory* element under *Languages* are always in scope. Languages  
2844 defined in the *Optional* element under *Languages* are in scope if selected by the deployer.
- 2845   The *Languages* element is used to declare the mandatory and optional language support available in  
2846 the package. Languages whose support is deployed by *LocalizationUnits* in *LocalizationContent*  
2847 MUST be defined as either a mandatory language or an optional language. In addition, languages  
2848 whose support is deployed along with other content by *InstallableUnits* in *BaseContent* or  
2849 *SelectableContent* SHOULD be defined as a mandatory language.
- 2850   See the *LanguageSelectionsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.4].
- 2851   ▪ **ResultingResource:** The software whose deployment is described by the SDD can be described in  
2852 the *CompositeInstallable*'s *ResultingResource* element. This software may consist of many resources  
2853 that are described in the *ResultingResource* elements of the *InstallableUnits* and/or *LocalizationUnits*  
2854 defined within the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 2855   See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- 2856   ▪ **ResultingChange:** Configuration changes that result from deployment regardless of selected content  
2857 or condition evaluation can be described in the *CompositeInstallable*'s *ResultingChange* element.
- 2858   Note that a *ResultingChange* is a change that is made to an existing resource. This is in contrast with  
2859 *ResultingResource*, which describes newly created resources.
- 2860   See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].
- 2861   ▪ **BaseContent:** The base content hierarchy defines content elements that are in scope by default.  
2862 These content elements MAY be conditioned out based on characteristics of the deployment  
2863 environment, but are not optional from the deployer's perspective.
- 2864   See the *BaseContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.11.1].
- 2865   ▪ **SelectableContent:** Content that is selected by feature MUST be defined in the selectable content  
2866 hierarchy. *Groups* and *Features* that select this content are also defined within *SelectableContent*.
- 2867   See the *SelectableContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.1].
- 2868   ▪ **LocalizationContent:** All *LocalizationUnits* and *ContainedLocalizationPackages* MUST be defined in  
2869 the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy. Each *LocalizationUnit* contains information about the languages it  
2870 supports and the resources it localizes. This information is evaluated to determine if the  
2871 *LocalizationUnit* is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 2872   Each *LocalizationUnit* and *ContainedLocalizationPackage* defined in *LocalizationContent* MAY  
2873 support any combination of *Mandatory* and *Optional* languages and can localize any combination of  
2874 base and selectable resources, as well as resources already deployed.
- 2875   Some language support may be deployed incidentally by artifacts in an *InstallableUnit* along with  
2876 deployment of other solution content. *LocalizationContent* holds only content elements whose sole  
2877 purpose is to provide language support.
- 2878   *LocalizationContent* supports advanced management of language support, including definition of  
2879 mandatory and optional languages and support of localization materials with a lifecycle that is  
2880 somewhat independent of the resources localized. When an SDD author has no need for advanced

- 2881 management of language support, all language support MAY be delivered with other content in  
 2882 *InstallableUnits*.
- 2883 See the *LocalizationContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.1].
- 2884 ▪ **id**: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 2885 log and trace messages.
  - 2886 ▪ **operation**: This is the *operation* that may be applied to the SDD package whose metadata is  
 2887 described by the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 2888 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

2889 **4.9.2 CompositeUnitType**



2890  
 2891 **Figure 74: CompositeUnitType structure.**

2892 The *CompositeUnit* element is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content  
 2893 hierarchies. It can define any number of *InstallableUnits*, *ConfigurationUnits*, *ContainedPackages* and  
 2894 other *CompositeUnits*. Composite units assist in organizing the deployment package. A composite unit  
 2895 can provide a convenient way to specify variables, requirements, conditions and other information that  
 2896 applies to every content element defined below the composite unit. Within the selectable content  
 2897 hierarchy, composite units can be used to group content elements that are selected by feature sets or  
 2898 groups. When a feature containing a composite unit is selected, all its child content elements are selected  
 2899 by association. Organization of content within a composite unit does not imply any relationships among  
 2900 the resources that result from deployment of the composite content.

2901 **4.9.2.1 CompositeUnitType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	0..1	Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the CompositeUnit and its child content elements are relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	0..1	Variables for use within the CompositeUnit's and its child content elements' requirement and artifact definitions.

Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of any of the CompositeUnit's content.
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0..*	An InstallableUnit that is part of the composite content.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0..*	A ConfigurationUnit that is part of the composite content.
CompositeUnit	CompositeUnitType	0..*	A CompositeUnit that organizes a subset of the composite's content.
ContainedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0..*	A ContainedPackage that is part of the composite content.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the CompositeUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

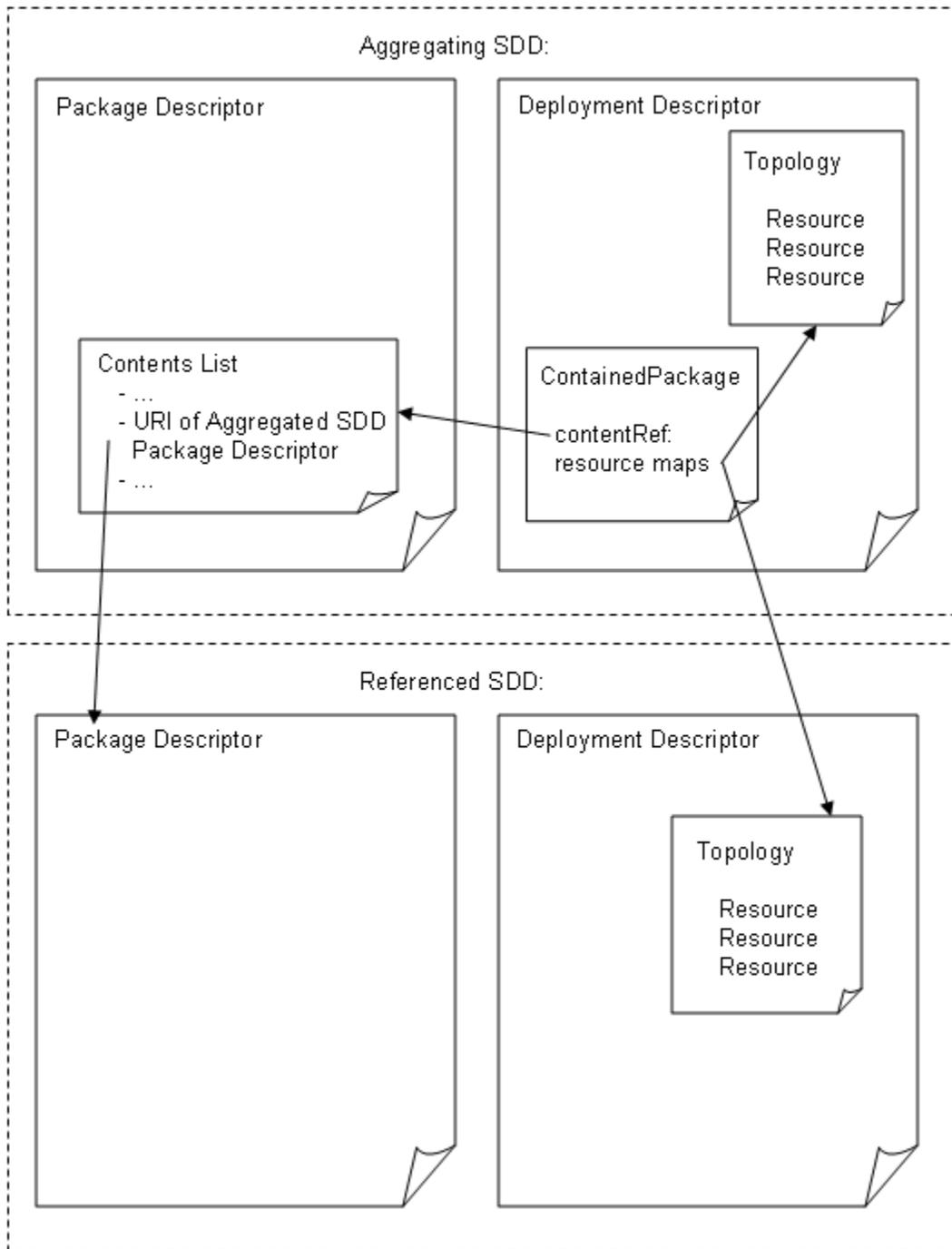
#### 2902 4.9.2.2 CompositeUnitType Property Usage Notes

- 2903
- 2904
    - **Identity:** This identity MAY have values in common with the identity of a resulting resource created when artifacts defined by content of the composite are processed.
- 2905 If the unit of packaging described by the *CompositeUnit* is known to a package management system,  
 2906 some of the identity elements MAY correspond to values associated with that package in the package  
 2907 management system.
- 2908 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 2909
    - **Condition:** When the condition defined in the *CompositeInstallable* is not met for a particular  
 2910 deployment, the *CompositeUnit* and all the content elements defined below the *CompositeUnit* are  
 2911 out of scope for that particular deployment.
- 2912 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 2913
    - **Variables:** Variables defined here are visible within the *CompositeUnit* and every content element  
 2914 defined below the *CompositeUnit*.
- 2915 These variables are in scope for a particular deployment only if the *CompositeUnit* is in scope for that  
 2916 deployment.
- 2917 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
- 2918
    - **Requirements:** These are requirements that must be met before any of the artifacts in the  
 2919 *CompositeUnit* hierarchy can be processed.
- 2920 These requirements are in scope for a particular deployment only if the *CompositeUnit* is in scope for  
 2921 that deployment.
- 2922 The *operation* defined for a *Requirement* defined in a *CompositeUnit* MUST be the same as the  
 2923 *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable* containing the *CompositeUnit*.
- 2924 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 2925
    - **InstallableUnit:** See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].
  - 2926
    - **ConfigurationUnit:** See the *ConfigurationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
 2927 [4.3.2].
  - 2928
    - **CompositeUnit:** A *CompositeUnit* element MAY contain child *CompositeUnits*.
  - 2929
    - **ContainedPackage:** See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
 2930 details [4.10.1].
  - 2931
    - **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
 2932 log and trace messages.

## 2933 4.10 Aggregation

2934 SDD packages can aggregate other SDD packages. Metadata about the aggregation is defined in  
2935 *ContainedPackage*, *ContainedLocalizationPackage* and *Requisite* elements. *ContainedPackage*  
2936 elements are content elements that can be defined anywhere in the base and selectable content  
2937 hierarchies. *ContainedLocalizationPackages* are content elements that can be defined in the localization  
2938 content hierarchy. *Requisites* are packages that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy requirements in  
2939 the aggregating SDD. They are not content of the SDD package. The type of all three of these elements  
2940 is *ReferencedPackageType*. The term *referenced package* is used in this specification when referring to  
2941 these elements as a group. The term *referenced SDD* is used when referring to any aggregated SDD.

2942 When an SDD aggregates other SDDs, the package descriptors of the aggregated SDDs are included in  
2943 the *Contents* list in the package descriptor of the aggregating SDD (see Figure 75). The referenced  
2944 package elements in the deployment descriptor identify a referenced SDD package by referencing its  
2945 package descriptor definition in *Contents*. Each referenced package element can further constrain the  
2946 deployment of the referenced SDD by defining additional requirements; by mapping resources defined in  
2947 the aggregating SDD to those defined in the referenced SDD; and by determining feature selections for  
2948 deployment of the referenced SDD.



2950  
 2951  
 2952  
 2953  
 2954  
 2955  
 2956  
 2957  
 2958  
 2959  
 2960

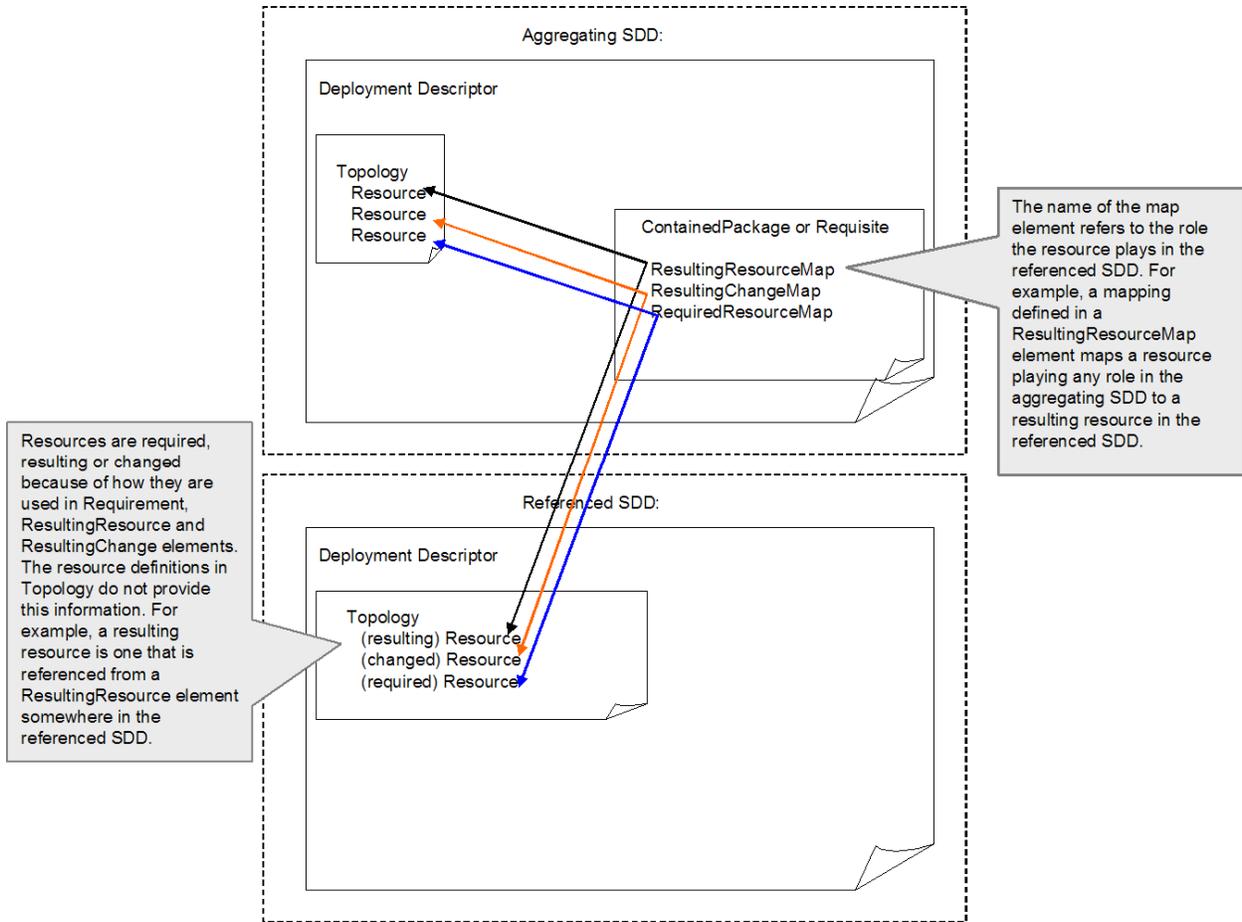
**Figure 75: The aggregating SDD identifies the package descriptor of the aggregated SDD and maps resource definitions in the aggregating SDD to resource definitions in the aggregated SDD.**

Referenced packages can create and modify software resources that may be required by the aggregating SDD or other SDDs in the aggregation. These resources are mapped to the associated resource definitions in the aggregating SDD by using the *ResultingResourceMap*, the *ResultingChangeMap* and the *RequiredResourceMap* elements of a referenced package element. The characteristics of these resources that other SDDs in the aggregation depend on in some way MUST be exposed in the *ResultingResourceMap*, the *ResultingChangeMap* and the *RequiredResourceMap* elements of the aggregating SDD (see Figure 76). These exposed characteristics are mapped to requirements, conditions

2961 and resource variables in the SDDs to determine if requirements are satisfied, conditions are met and to  
2962 set the values of resource property variables (see Figure 77).

2963

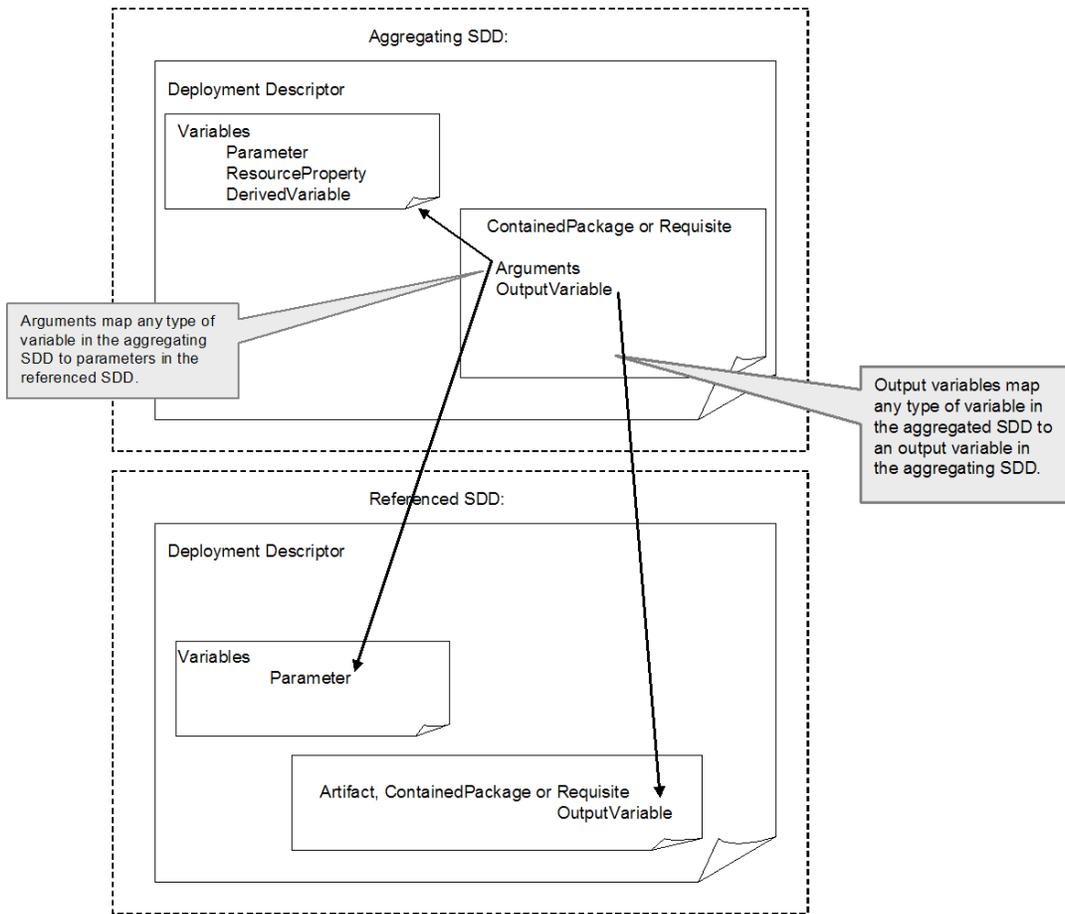
2964



2965

2966 **Figure 76: The list of resource maps is segmented by the role the resource plays in the referenced**  
2967 **SDD.**

2968



2969

2970

2971

**Figure 77: Arguments and OutputVariables of ReferencedPackageType map variables in the aggregating SDD to variables in the referenced SDD.**



			is relevant to a particular deployment.
RequiredContentSelection	RequiredContentSelectionType	0..1	A list of groups and features that MUST be selected when the referenced package is deployed.
Arguments	ArgumentListType	0..1	Inputs to the reference package.
OutputVariables	OutputVariableListType	0..1	Outputs from the referenced package.
Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Additional requirements for deploying the referenced package as part of the aggregation.
ResultingResourceMap	ResultingResourceMapType	0..*	Maps resulting resources in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package and exposes properties of the resulting resource.
ResultingChangeMap	ResultingChangeMapType	0..*	Maps changed resources defined in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package and exposes changed properties of the resource.
RequiredResourceMap	ResourceMapType	0..*	Maps required resources in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package.
Languages	LanguagesType	0..1	Languages supported by the referenced package.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the referenced package element that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
contentRef	xsd:token	1	Reference to the identifier of the package Content defined in the package descriptor which identifies the package descriptor of the referenced package.
weight	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	The time required to process the referenced package relative to all artifacts and other referenced packages in the SDD.
operation	OperationType	0..1	Specifies which operation in the referenced SDD is performed.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 2981 4.10.1.2 ReferencedPackageType Property Usage Notes

- 2982
- 2983
- 2984
- 2985
- 2986
- 2987
- 2988
- 2989
- 2990
- 2991
- 2992
- 2993
- 2994
- **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the *ReferencedPackage*'s content should only be deployed when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.  
See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
  - **RequiredContentSelection:** Certain *Groups* or *Features* may need to be selected when deploying the referenced package. These can be identified in the *RequiredContentSelection* element.  
If one particular aggregated SDD requires the selection of different groups or features, depending on other choices made during a particular deployment, different *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* elements can be defined in a way that will cause the correct combination of *Groups* and *Features* to be used in each situation.  
See the *RequiredContentSelectionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.13].
  - **Arguments:** Arguments are used to provide values for input variables defined in the deployment descriptor of the referenced package. The argument name specified MUST reference the *id* of a parameter in the referenced package.

2995 See the *ArgumentListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.8].

2996 ■ **OutputVariables:** The output variable mapping can be used to set variables to outputs created by  
 2997 processing the referenced SDD. The output variables in the referenced package are mapped to  
 2998 output variables in the aggregating SDD.

2999 Each output variable value specified MUST reference the *id* of an output variable in the referenced  
 3000 package. This can be an output variable from an artifact or an output variable from a referenced  
 3001 package defined within the referenced SDD.

3002 See the *OutputVariableListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.10].

3003 ■ **Requirements:** When the aggregating SDD has stricter requirements for the use of the referenced  
 3004 SDD than are defined by the referenced SDD itself, those requirements can be defined in  
 3005 *Requirements*. This is not intended to repeat requirements expressed in the referenced SDD, but  
 3006 rather to add additional stricter requirements.

3007 Requirements expressed in the referenced SDD need to be satisfied, in addition to the requirements  
 3008 expressed in the *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* element of the aggregating SDD.

3009 Requirements expressed in the aggregating SDD MUST NOT conflict with requirements expressed in  
 3010 the referenced SDD. The requirements specified MUST further constrain the referenced package.

3011 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].

3012 ■ **ResultingResourceMap:** Resources created by the referenced package may be resources that are  
 3013 defined in the aggregating SDD. The *ResultingResourceMap* is used to identify the correspondence  
 3014 between resource definitions in the aggregating SDD and resulting resource definitions in the  
 3015 aggregated SDD.

3016 Characteristics of the resulting resources MAY be exposed in the *ResultingResourceMap* element.  
 3017 *ResourceConstraints* defined on those resources anywhere in the aggregation are mapped to the  
 3018 resource properties exposed in the resulting maps of the referenced package to determine if the  
 3019 referenced package will satisfy the constraints. Each individual constraint is considered met by the  
 3020 referenced package if a property exposed in the resulting resource map that is in scope for the  
 3021 particular deployment satisfies the constraint.

3022 For example, a property constraint in a *ResourceConstraint* element states that the property  
 3023 named "FileAttributes" has the value "Writeable". The *resourceRef* in the *ResourceConstraint*  
 3024 identifies a resource defined in *Topology* that is also identified in the *ResultingResourceMap* of a  
 3025 *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* element that is in scope for the particular deployment. If the  
 3026 *ResultingResourceMap* element contains a statement that the property named "FileAttributes"  
 3027 has the value "Writeable", then the *ResourceConstraint* is met when the *Requisite* or  
 3028 *ContainedPackage* is deployed.

3029 This same logic applies to *ResourceConstraints* in aggregated packages. If the SDD in the preceding  
 3030 example also aggregates another SDD and maps the same resource to a required resource in that  
 3031 aggregated SDD, then all *ResourceConstraints* in the aggregated SDD are met only if the  
 3032 *ResultingResourceMap* of the referenced SDD that creates that resource contains a *Name*, *Version*  
 3033 or *Property* definition that satisfies the constraint.

3034 See the *ResultingResourceMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.3].

3035 ■ **ResultingChangeMap:** Resources configured by the referenced package may be resources that are  
 3036 defined in the aggregating SDD. The *ResultingChangeMap* is used to identify the correspondence  
 3037 between resource definitions in the aggregating SDD and changed resources defined in  
 3038 *ResultingChange* elements of the aggregated SDD.

3039 Characteristics of resources that are changed by the referenced SDD MAY be exposed in the  
 3040 *ResultingChangeMap*. These are correlated with *ResourceConstraints* on the changed resource in  
 3041 the same manner as the exposed characteristics of a resulting resource. See the property usage  
 3042 notes for *ResultingResourceMap* above.

3043 See the *ResultingChangeMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.4].

3044 ■ **RequiredResourceMap:** When a resource required by the aggregated SDD is a resource also  
 3045 defined in the aggregating SDD, the *RequiredResourceMap* is used to identify the correspondence.

3046 This element is a simple mapping of a resource in one SDD to a resource in another. There is no  
3047 need to expose characteristics of the resource because it is not created or modified by the referenced  
3048 package.

3049 One resource MAY be required, resulting, changed, all three or any combination of these within one  
3050 SDD. When a resource in the referenced SDD plays more than one role, the mapping MUST be  
3051 repeated everywhere it applies. This allows exposure of all the created or modified properties in the  
3052 *ResultingChangeMap* and *ResultingResourceMap*. In this situation—when one resource in the  
3053 referenced SDD plays more than one of the roles identified earlier (required, resulting or changed)—all  
3054 mappings MUST be to the same resource in the aggregating SDD. Only the exposed resulting and  
3055 changed properties differ.

3056 See the *ResourceMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.2].

3057 ▪ **Languages:** Languages supported by the referenced package MAY be identified here. This list does  
3058 not identify mandatory versus optional languages; it is for informational purposes only. The SDD  
3059 author is not limiting use of the referenced package to deployments where all in-scope languages are  
3060 found in this list. There may be cases where aggregated packages are deployed even though they  
3061 cannot support all of the languages supported by the aggregation as a whole.

3062 Each language specified MUST match a language in the referenced package.

3063 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].

3064 ▪ **id:** The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
3065 log and trace messages.

3066 ▪ **contentRef:** The package descriptor of an SDD that aggregates other SDDs, either through  
3067 *ContainedPackage* elements or *Requisite* elements, will list the package descriptor files of the  
3068 aggregated SDDs in its content list. The *contentRef* attribute of a referenced package element MUST  
3069 be a reference to the *id* of a *Content* element in the aggregating SDD's package descriptor that  
3070 defines the aggregated package descriptor.

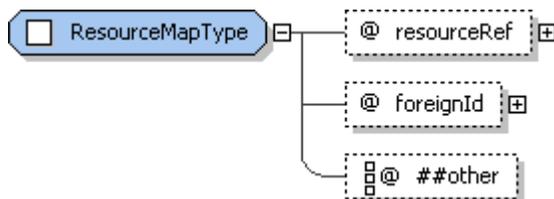
3071 ▪ **weight:** Defining weights for all artifacts and referenced packages in an SDD provides useful  
3072 information to software that manages deployment. The weight of the referenced package refers to the  
3073 relative time taken to deploy the referenced package with respect to other packages in this SDD.

3074 For example, if the referenced package takes twice as long to deploy as a particular install artifact  
3075 whose weight is "4", then the weight of the referenced package would be "8". The weight numbers  
3076 have no meaning in isolation and do not describe actual time elapsed. They simply provide an  
3077 estimate of relative time.

3078 ▪ **operation:** The referenced SDD may support more than one deployment lifecycle operation. The  
3079 *operation* attribute MUST include the operations that are applicable when this is the case.

3080 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

## 3081 4.10.2 ResourceMapType



3082  
3083 **Figure 79: ResourceMapType structure.**

3084 *ResourceMapType* is used in the definition of elements that map resources in an SDD to resources in a  
3085 referenced SDD. The purpose of a resource map is to identify when two resources in separate SDDs  
3086 MUST resolve to the same resource instance during any particular deployment. The characteristics of a  
3087 mapped resource that are defined in the topology sections of the two SDDs MUST NOT conflict.

3088 For example, if a *Name* is defined for the resource in both topologies, it MUST be the same in both  
3089 definitions and if a *Property* definition is included for the same property in both places, the value  
3090 MUST be the same.

3091 Additional characteristics of a mapped resource may be constrained by *Requirements* or *Conditions* in  
 3092 either SDD. All constraints on a mapped resource that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST  
 3093 NOT conflict.

3094 Resources that are not mapped between the two SDDs MAY resolve to the same instance when their  
 3095 characteristics defined in topology do not conflict and when the constraints in scope for any particular  
 3096 deployment do not conflict.

3097 The *RequiredResourceMap*, *ResultingResourceMap* and *ResultingChangeMap* elements all use  
 3098 *ResourceMapType*, either directly or as a base type that is extended.

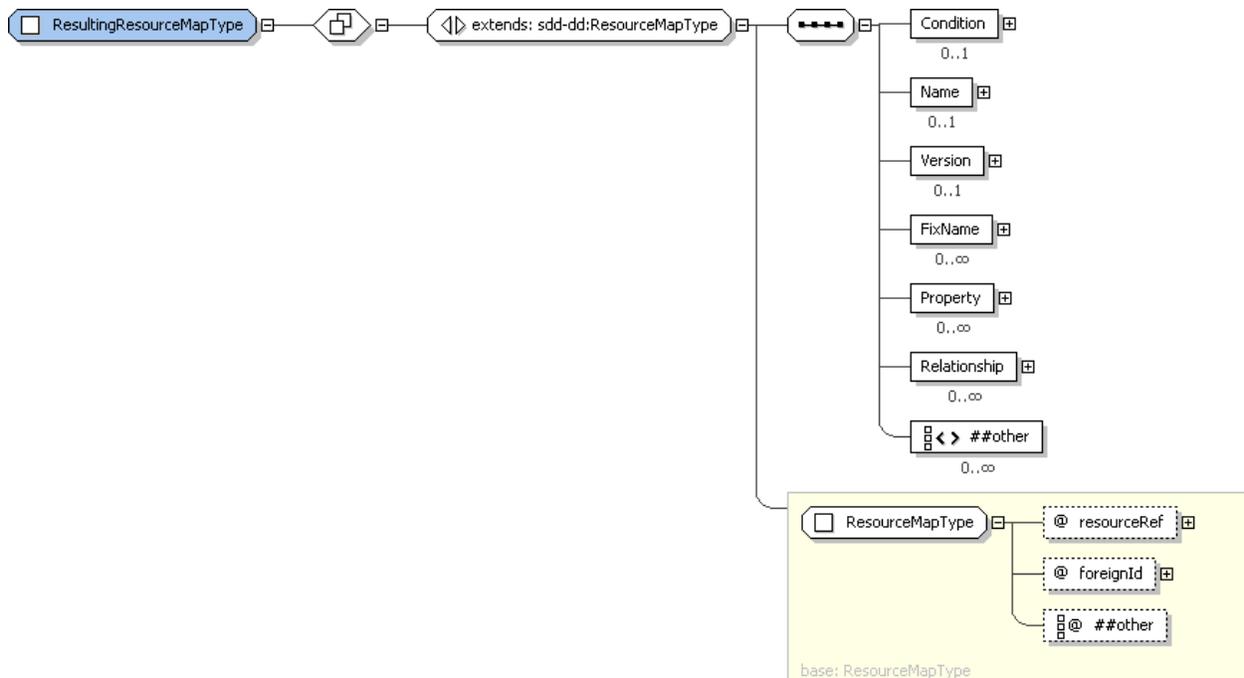
3099 **4.10.2.1 ResourceMapType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a resource defined in the deployment descriptor.
foreignID	xsd:NCName	0..1	Reference to a resource defined in a referenced deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3100 **4.10.2.2 ResourceMapType Property Usage Notes**

- 3101 ▪ **resourceRef:** The value of the *resourceRef* MUST be set to the *id* of the resource in the SDD to be  
 3102 mapped to a resource in a referenced SDD.
- 3103 ▪ **foreignID:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource in the referenced package. This is the  
 3104 resource in the referenced SDD that MUST resolve to the same resource instance as the resource  
 3105 identified in *resourceRef*.

3106 **4.10.3 ResultingResourceMapType**



3107 **Figure 80: ResultingResourceMapType structure.**

3108 *ResultingResourceMapType* defines an element type that maps resources that result from deployment of  
 3109 the referenced SDD to a resource in the referencing SDD. In addition to identifying the two resources that  
 3110 MUST resolve to the same resource instance, the resulting resource map allows characteristics of the  
 3111 resulting resource to be exposed. There may be constraints defined on the mapped resource in the  
 3112

3113 referencing SDD or any referenced SDD in the hierarchy of SDDs. These constraints can be evaluated by  
 3114 comparing the constraint to the exposed characteristics defined in the resulting resource map. The  
 3115 resulting resource map MUST expose sufficient characteristics of the resulting resource to support  
 3116 successful evaluation of constraints on that resource.

3117 For example, say that the SDD defines a resource with id="Database" in its topology. The solution  
 3118 can work with Database Product A or Database Product B. Database Product A is created by a  
 3119 referenced SDD defined in a *Requisites* element. The SDD will contain *Requirements* and/or  
 3120 *Conditions* that have alternatives for each of the database products. All constraints on the Database  
 3121 resource that apply to Database Product A must be satisfied by a resource characteristic exposed in  
 3122 the *ResultingResourceMap* element of the *Requisite* element that points to the SDD that deploys  
 3123 Database Product A.

3124 **4.10.3.1 ResultingResourceMapType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] ResourceMapType		See the ResourceMapType section for additional properties [4.10.2].
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the resulting resource definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	The name of the resource created or updated by the referenced SDD.
Version	VersionType	0..1	The version of the resource created or updated by the referenced SDD.
FixName	xsd:string	0..*	Names of fixes to the mapped resource that are created by the referenced SDD.
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0..*	Properties set when the mapped resource is created or updated by the referenced SDD.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0..*	Relationship that will exist after creating or updating the resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	

3125 **4.10.3.2 ResultingResourceMapType Property Usage Notes**

3126 See the *ResourceMapType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.10.2].

3127 **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resulting resource will be created by the referenced  
 3128 package only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3129 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3130 **Name:** The *Name* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be  
 3131 defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are constraints on this resource that contain a *Name*  
 3132 element. "Defined elsewhere" means defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the  
 3133 topology of any other referenced SDD for a resource that is also mapped to the same resource.  
 3134 "Constraints on this resource" means a constraint that applies to the particular instantiation of the  
 3135 resource that is created or updated by the referenced SDD, for example a constraint that needs to  
 3136 successfully map to the referenced SDD for the referenced SDD to be used in a particular  
 3137 deployment.

3138 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

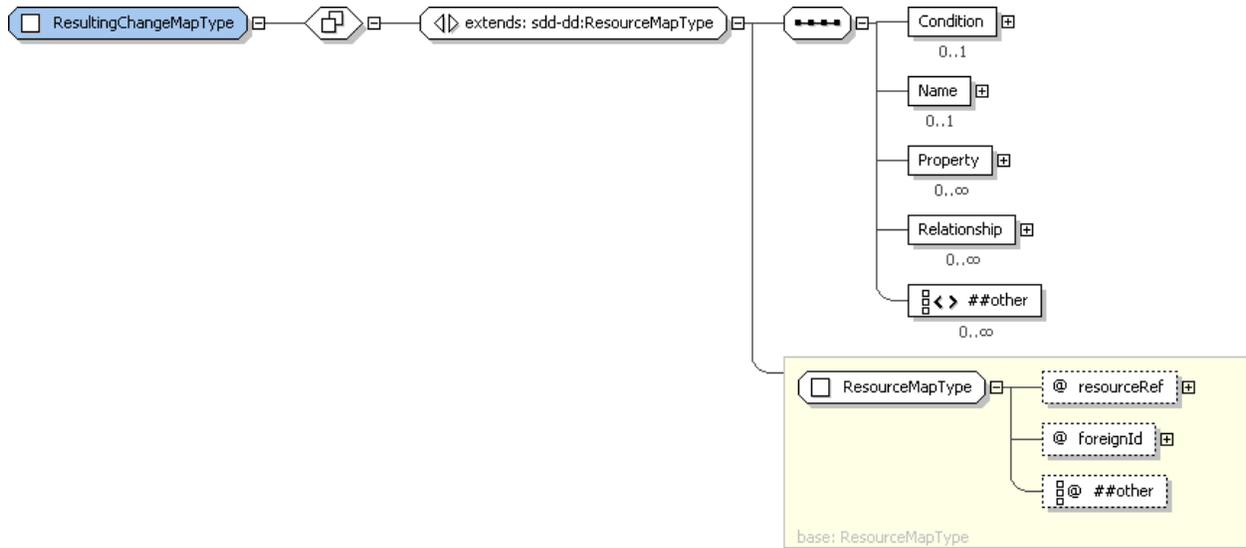
3139 **Version:** The *Version* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be  
 3140 defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are version constraints defined on this resource. (See  
 3141 the usage note for *Name* above for a definition of "defined elsewhere".)

3142 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].

3143 **FixName:** One or more names of fixes to the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced  
 3144 SDD MUST be defined if they are not defined elsewhere and there are version constraints defined on

- 3145 this resource that include fix names. (See the usage note for *Name* above for a definition of “defined  
 3146 elsewhere”.)
- 3147 ▪ **Property:** A *Property* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be  
 3148 defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are property constraints on this property. (See the  
 3149 usage note for *Name* above for a definition of “defined elsewhere”.)
- 3150 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- 3151 ▪ **Relationship:** Any number of *Relationship* elements can be included to identify relationships that will  
 3152 exist after applying the referenced package.
- 3153 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

3154 **4.10.4 ResultingChangeMapType**



3155 **Figure 81: ResultingChangeMapType structure.**

3157 *ResultingChangeMapType* is very similar to *ResultingResourceMapType*. It defines an element type that  
 3158 maps resources that are changed by deployment of the referenced SDD to a resource in the referencing  
 3159 SDD. In addition to identifying the two resources that MUST resolve to the same resource instance, the  
 3160 resulting change map allows characteristics of the modified resource to be exposed. There may be  
 3161 constraints defined on the mapped resource in the referencing SDD or any referenced SDD in the  
 3162 hierarchy of SDDs. These constraints can be evaluated by comparing the constraint to the exposed  
 3163 characteristics defined in the resulting change map. The resulting change map MUST expose sufficient  
 3164 characteristics of the resulting change to support successful evaluation of constraints on that resource.

3165 For example, say that the SDD defines a resource with id="OS" in its topology. The solution can work  
 3166 with Windows or Linux. Linux is configured by a referenced SDD defined in a *Requisites* element. The  
 3167 SDD will contain *Requirements* and/or *Conditions* that have alternatives for Windows and for Linux.  
 3168 All constraints on the modified characteristics of Linux must be satisfied by a resource characteristic  
 3169 exposed in the *ResultingChangeMap* element of the *Requisite* element that points to the SDD that  
 3170 configures Linux.

3171 **4.10.4.1 ResultingChangeMapType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] ResourceMapType		See the ResourceMapType section for additional properties [4.10.2].
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the resulting change definition is relevant to a particular deployment.

Name	VariableExpressionType	0..1	The name of the modified resource.
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0..*	A modified property of the resource.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0..*	Relationship that will exist after the change is applied to the resource.
	xsd:any	0..*	

#### 3172 4.10.4.2 ResultingChangeMapType Property Usage Notes

3173 See the *ResourceMapType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.10.2].

3174 ▪ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the resource mapped from the external package will be  
3175 changed only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3176 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3177 ▪ **Name:** The *Name* of the resource that is modified by the referenced SDD is defined here to assist  
3178 with identifying the resource instance that is changed. It is not an indication that the resource name  
3179 itself is modified by the referenced SDD. If resource characteristics defined in the topology of any  
3180 SDD defining a resource mapped to the changed resource are sufficient to identify the resource, then  
3181 *Name* SHOULD NOT be defined in the *ResultingChangeMap*.

3182 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

3183 ▪ **Property:** A modified property MUST be exposed in a *ResultingChangeMap* if it is not defined  
3184 elsewhere and there are property constraints on the modified property. “Defined elsewhere” means  
3185 defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the topology of any other referenced SDD for a  
3186 resource that is also mapped to the same resource. “Constraints on the modified property” means a  
3187 property constraint that applies to the particular instantiation of the resource that is modified by the  
3188 referenced SDD, for example a constraint that needs to successfully map to the referenced SDD for  
3189 the referenced SDD to be used in a particular deployment.

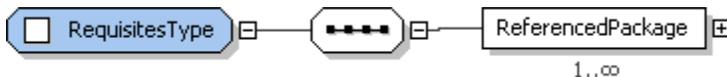
3190 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].

3191 ▪ **Relationship:** *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships that will exist after  
3192 the application of the referenced package.

3193 Relationships that need to be known by the aggregate MUST be mapped. Relationships need to be  
3194 known when they are referred to in one or more resource constraints.

3195 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

#### 3196 4.10.5 RequisitesType



3197

3198 **Figure 82: RequisitesType structure.**

3199 The *Requisites* element contains a list of references to SDD packages that can be used to satisfy one or  
3200 more of the requirements defined by content elements. The definition of a requisite does not imply that it  
3201 must be used; only that it is available for use if needed.

3202 Requisite definitions can map values and resources defined in the SDD to inputs and resources defined  
3203 in the requisite SDD.

#### 3204 4.10.5.1 RequisitesType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
ReferencedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	1..*	An SDD package that can, but is not required to, be deployed to satisfy a requirement.

3205 **4.10.5.2 RequisitesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3206 ▪ **ReferencedPackage:** See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
3207 details [4.10.1].

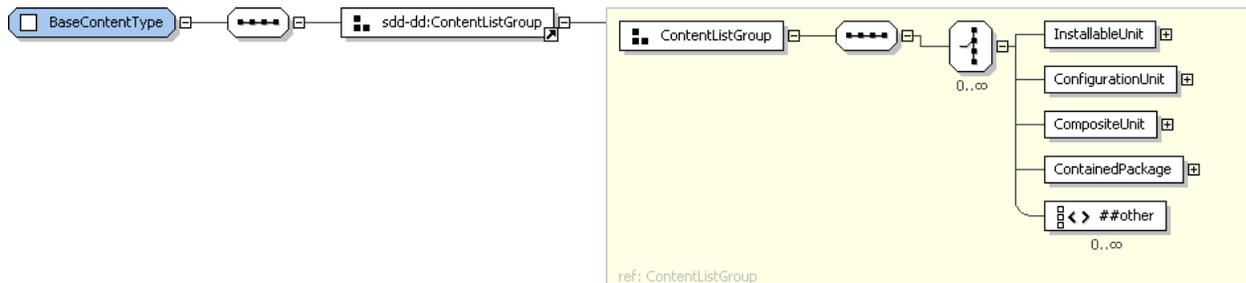
3208 **4.11 Base Content**

3209 Base content is the default content for the deployment lifecycle operation associated with the  
3210 *CompositeInstallable* that contains the base content. This is content that is deployed whenever the  
3211 associated operation is performed on the SDD package. Base content may be conditioned on  
3212 characteristics of the deployment environment but it is not selectable by the deployer.

3213 Resources associated with base content for one operation may be different from resources associated  
3214 with base content for a different operation in the same SDD package.

3215 For example, base content in the *CompositeInstallable* for the configuration operation may configure  
3216 resources that were created by selectable content in the *CompositeInstallable* for the install  
3217 operation. In this example, the configuration is in base content because it must be done if the  
3218 resource exists. It is not selectable by the deployer during the configuration operation.

3219 **4.11.1 BaseContentType**



3220 **Figure 83: BaseContentType structure.**  
3221

3222 The *BaseContent* hierarchy defines the default content for the deployment operation described by the  
3223 *CompositeInstallable*. This content MAY be conditioned.

3224 **4.11.1.1 BaseContentType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0..*	An InstallableUnit that defines base content.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0..*	A ConfigurationUnit that defines base configuration content.
CompositeUnit	CompositeUnitType	0..*	A CompositeUnit that organizes base content.
ContainedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0..*	An SDD whose content is considered to be base content in the context of this aggregation.
	xsd:any	0..*	

3225 **4.11.1.2 BaseContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 3226 ▪ **InstallableUnit:** See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].
- 3227 ▪ **ConfigurationUnit:** See the *ConfigurationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
3228 [4.3.2].
- 3229 ▪ **CompositeUnit:** See the *CompositeUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
3230 [4.9.2].

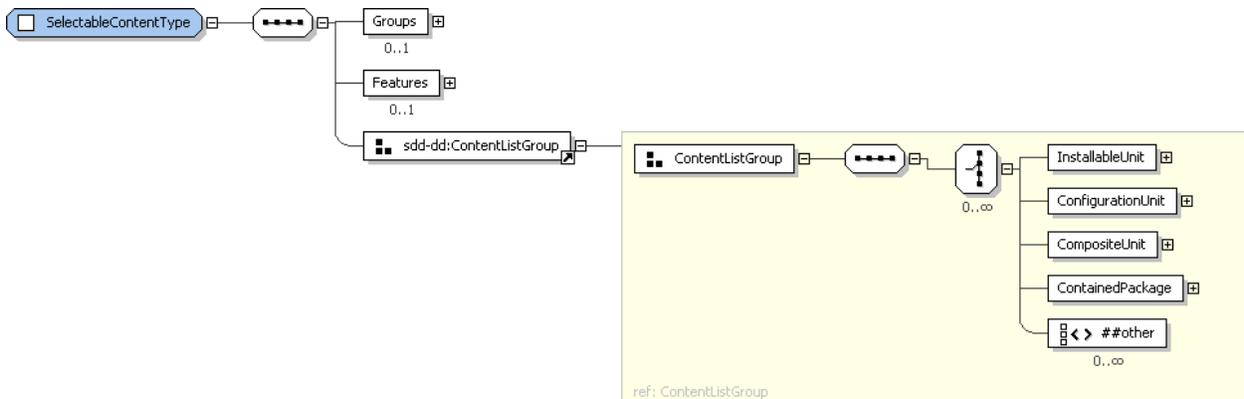
- 3231   ▪ **ContainedPackage:** See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
 3232 details [4.10.1].

3233   **4.12 Content Selectability**

3234   The SDD author MAY define selectable subsets of content using *Groups* and *Features*. Selectability, as  
 3235 used in the SDD, is a characteristic of the deployment lifecycle operation and the package. The decision  
 3236 to provide selectability for one operation in one package has no semantic relationship to the selectability  
 3237 provided in another package related to the same software. It also has no semantic relationship to the  
 3238 selectability provided for a different operation within the same package.

3239       For example, when the SDD author chooses to create a feature in a maintenance package, that  
 3240 feature is designed to allow selectable application of the maintenance, not to reflect the original set of  
 3241 features for the base content.

3242   **4.12.1 SelectableContentType**



3243   **Figure 84: SelectableContentType structure.**

3245   Content elements defined here make up the selectable content hierarchy. These elements are selected  
 3246 via *Groups* and *Features* also defined under *SelectableContent*.

3247   **4.12.1.1 SelectableContentType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Groups	GroupsType	0..1	Groups of features that can be selected as a unit.
Features	FeaturesType	0..1	A definition of user-selectable content.
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0..*	An InstallableUnit that defines selectable content.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0..*	A ConfigurationUnit that defines selectable configuration.
CompositeUnit	CompositeUnitType	0..*	A CompositeUnit that organizes content elements that define selectable content.
ContainedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0..*	An SDD package whose content is selectable in the context of the aggregating SDD.
	xsd:any	0..*	

3248   **4.12.1.2 SelectableContentType Property Usage Notes**

- 3249   ▪ **Groups:** *Groups* can be used by the SDD author to define a convenient way for deployers to select a  
 3250 group of features.

3251 “Typical” and “Custom” are examples of groups that are commonly presented in installation  
3252 interfaces.

3253 See the *GroupsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.2].

- 3254 ▪ **Features:** *Features* can be used to organize optional functionality into meaningful selections.  
3255 *Features* should be meaningful from the deployer’s point of view.

3256 See the *FeaturesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.4].

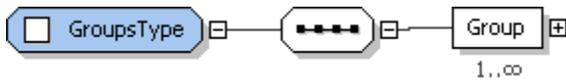
- 3257 ▪ **InstallableUnit:** See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].

- 3258 ▪ **ConfigurationUnit:** See the *ConfigurationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
3259 [4.3.2].

- 3260 ▪ **CompositeUnit:** See the *CompositeUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details  
3261 [4.9.2].

- 3262 ▪ **ContainedPackage:** See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage  
3263 details [4.10.1].

## 3264 4.12.2 GroupsType



3265  
3266 **Figure 85: Groups structure.**

3267 *GroupsType* is used in *SelectableContent* to provide a list of one or more *Group* elements.

### 3268 4.12.2.1 GroupsType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Group	GroupType	1..*	A group of features that can be selected together.

### 3269 4.12.2.2 GroupsType Property Usage Notes

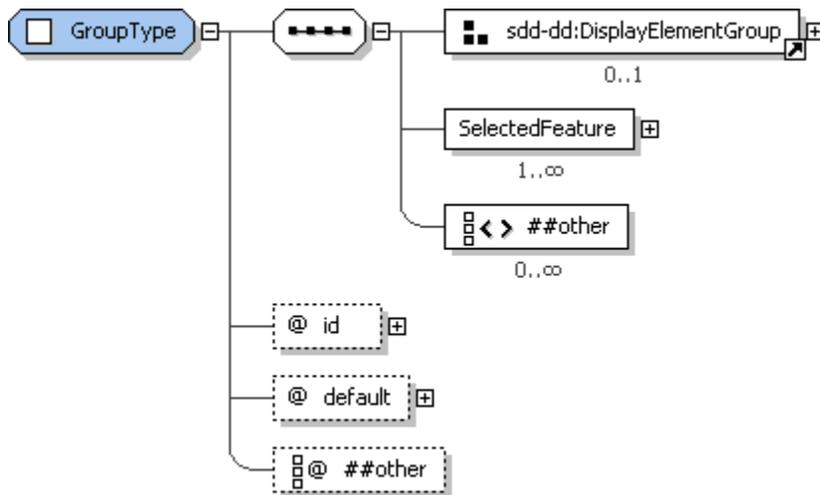
- 3270 ▪ **Group:** Associating features in a *Group* is based on the characteristics of the package and the ways  
3271 in which the SDD author chooses to expose function variability to the deployer.

3272 One example is a “Typical” group that allows easy selection of the most common grouping of  
3273 features, along with a “Custom” group that allows an advanced user to select from among all  
3274 features. Another example is a “Client” group that selects features that deploy the client software  
3275 for an application, along with a “Server” group that selects features that deploy the server  
3276 software for the same application.

3277 If alternative sets of selections are desired, *Groups* MUST be used to define these sets. Zero or one  
3278 set can be selected for any particular deployment

3279 See the *GroupType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.3].

3280 **4.12.3 GroupType**



3281  
3282 **Figure 86: GroupType structure.**

3283 *GroupType* provides the type definition for each *Group* element in *SelectableContent*'s list of *Groups*. For  
3284 a particular deployment, zero or one groups may be selected by the deployer.

3285 **4.12.3.1 GroupType Property Summary**

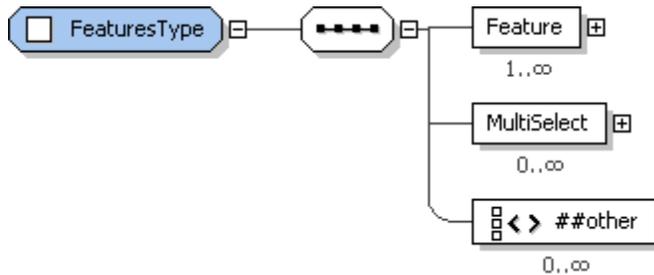
Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable name for the group.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable description of the group.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable short description of the group.
SelectedFeature	FeatureReferenceType	1..*	A feature that is part of the group.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier of the group that is unique within the descriptor.
default	xsd:boolean	0..1	Indicates that the group is selected by default when no selections are provided by the deployer. **default value="false"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3286 **4.12.3.2 GroupType Property Usage Notes**

- 3287 ▪ **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
3288 MUST provide a label for the group.  
3289 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3290 ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
3291 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the group.  
3292 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
3293 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3294 ▪ **SelectedFeature:** Each *SelectedFeature* is considered selected if inputs identify the group as  
3295 selected.  
3296 Selection of a nested feature causes its parent feature to be selected.

- 3297 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- 3298 ▪ **id**: The group's *id* may be used to refer to the group when aggregating the SDD into another SDD.
- 3299 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 3300 log and trace messages.
- 3301 ▪ **default**: Multiple default *Groups* MUST NOT be defined.

3302 **4.12.4 FeaturesType**



3303  
3304 **Figure 87: FeaturesType structure.**

3305 *FeaturesType* provides the type definition for the single, optional, *Features* element in *SelectableContent*.

3306 Features defined directly under the *Features* element in *SelectableContent* are the top level features. A

3307 *Features* element may also include a *MultiSelect* element that refers to features whose selections are

3308 interdependent.

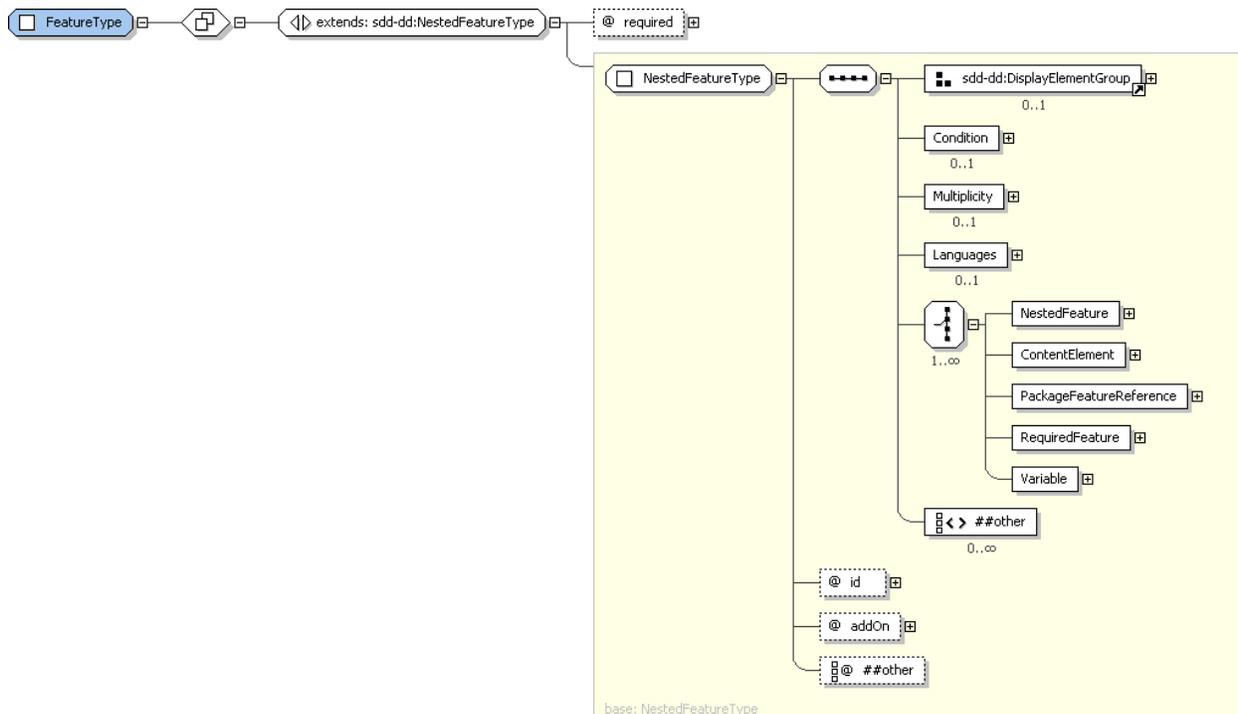
3309 **4.12.4.1 FeaturesType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Feature	FeatureType	1..*	A top level feature in the hierarchy of features defined in <i>SelectableContent</i> .
MultiSelect	MultiSelectType	0..*	A list of feature references whose selection is controlled as a multi-select list with defined minimum and maximum selections.
	xsd:any	0..*	

3310 **4.12.4.2 FeaturesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3311 ▪ **Feature**: Each top level *Feature* can define *NestedFeatures*. All features can define required
- 3312 relationships with other features that cause the required feature to be selected.
- 3313 See the *FeatureType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.5].
- 3314 ▪ **MultiSelect**: The *MultiSelect* element MUST refer to *Feature* or *NestedFeature* elements.
- 3315 See the *MultiSelectType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.15].

3316 **4.12.5 FeatureType**



3317  
3318 **Figure 88: FeatureType structure.**

3319 *FeatureType* provides the type definition for each feature defined directly below *SelectableContent*. A  
3320 *Feature* can define *NestedFeatures* and identify *ContentElements* and other features that will be selected  
3321 when the feature is selected. A feature can also be defined to be available for selection only under certain  
3322 conditions.

3323 **4.12.5.1 FeatureType Property Summary**

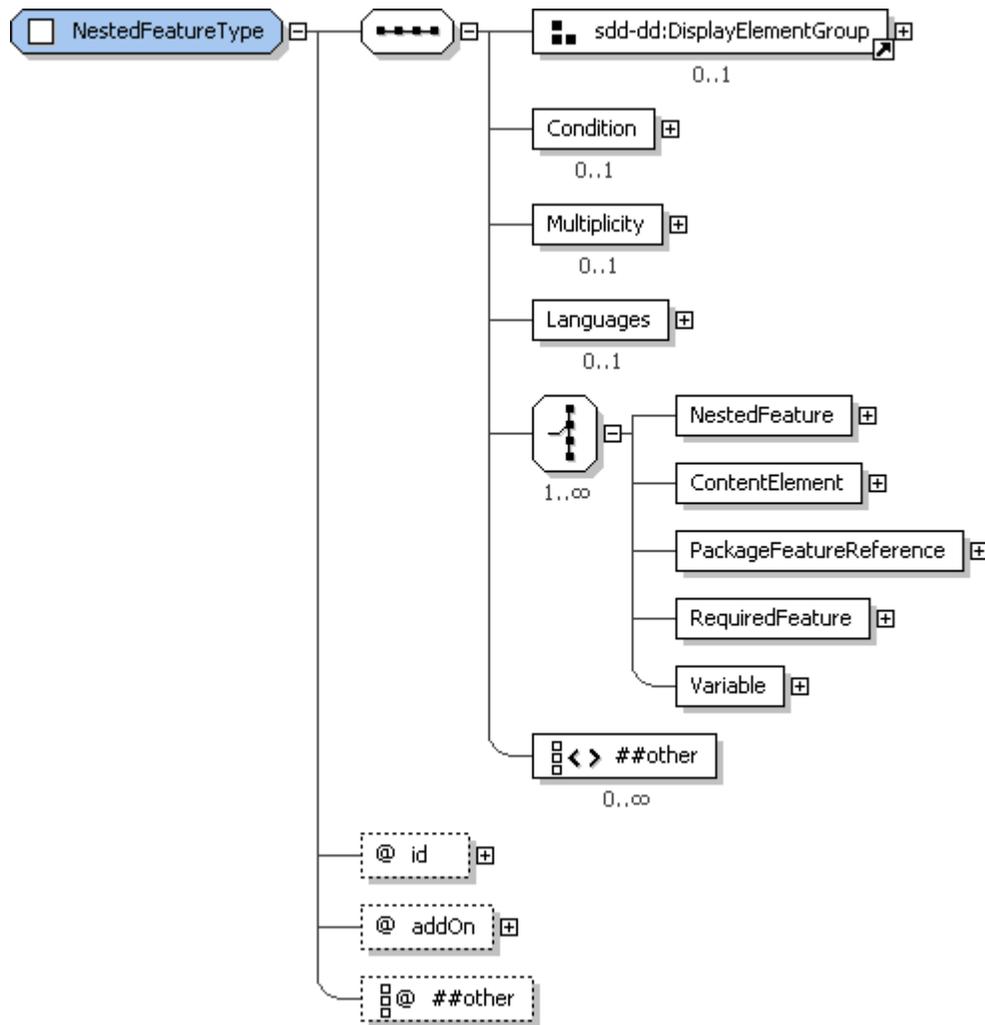
Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] NestedFeatureType		See the NestedFeatureType section for additional properties [4.12.6].
required	xsd:boolean	0..1	Indicates the feature must be selected. **default value="false"

3324 **4.12.5.2 FeatureType Property Usage Notes**

- 3325 See the *NestedFeatureType* section for details of the inherited attributes and elements [4.12.6].
- 3326 **required:** A top level *Feature* MUST be selected when the value of the *required* attribute is "true". In  
3327 this case, the user cannot choose to deselect this top level *Feature*.
- 3328 In *Features* that define *Multiplicity*, the SDD author can state a minimum number of instances of the  
3329 *Feature*. This minimum applies only if the *Feature* is selected. The *required* attribute can be used to  
3330 indicate that the *Feature* is always selected and so the minimum number of instances applies.
- 3331 The *required* attribute SHOULD be used only when *Multiplicity* is applied to the *Feature*.

3332

### 4.12.6 NestedFeatureType



3333

3334 **Figure 89: NestedFeatureType structure.**

3335 *NestedFeatureType* is identical to *FeatureType* except that *NestedFeatureType* does not define a  
 3336 *required* attribute. All features other than those defined directly below *SelectableContent* use the  
 3337 *NestedFeatureType*.

#### 3338 4.12.6.1 NestedFeatureType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable name for the feature.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable description of the feature.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A human-readable short description of the feature.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the feature is relevant to a particular deployment.
Multiplicity	MultiplicityType	0..1	Both an indication that multiple instances of the feature can be selected and the specification of their constraints.

Languages	LanguageSelectionsType	0..1	A list of language support available for the feature's content.
NestedFeature	NestedFeatureType	0..*	A nested feature.
ContentElement	ContentElementReferenceType	0..*	A reference to a content element to be deployed when the feature is selected.
PackageFeatureReference	PackageFeatureReferenceType	0..*	A reference to a feature to be selected in a ContainedPackage defined in either the BaseContent or SelectableContent hierarchies.
RequiredFeature	FeatureReferenceType	0..*	A reference to a feature that is required when the defining feature is selected and so is selected automatically.
Variable	DerivedVariableType	0..*	The definition of a variable that can be used anywhere in any variable expression in the SDD.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Used within the SDD to refer to the feature.
addOn	xsd:boolean	0..1	A "true" value indicates that the feature can be added to a deployed instance of the solution. **default value="false"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

#### 3339 4.12.6.2 NestedFeatureType Property Usage Notes

- 3340
- 3341
- 3342
- 3343
- 3344
- 3345
- 3346
- 3347
- 3348
- 3349
- 3350
- 3351
- 3352
- 3353
- 3354
- 3355
- 3356
- 3357
- 3358
- 3359
- 3360
- 3361
- **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the nested feature.  
See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the nested feature.  
The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.  
See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
  - **Condition:** If the features and its nested features are only applicable in certain environments, a *Condition* can be defined. When the *Condition* is not met, the feature and its nested features are not in scope.  
For example, some features may be available only on a Linux operating system, even though the software can be applied on other operating systems. In this case, a *Condition* can be defined to cause the feature to be ignored when the operating system is not Linux.  
See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
  - **Multiplicity:** When multiple instances of a feature can be selected, a *Multiplicity* element MUST be defined.  
For example, a solution that includes a server and a client may allow the deployment of multiple clients. In this situation, a feature that defines a *Multiplicity* element would select the content elements that deploy the client software.  
See the *MultiplicityType* section for structure and usage details [4.12.7].
  - **Languages:** Sometimes language support for a feature is different than that available for the overall solution. This is especially likely when features are implemented by aggregation of packages

3362 provided by different teams. When language support differs, the *Languages* element of the feature  
3363 MUST be defined to state which languages are supported for the feature.

3364 When *Languages* is defined in a feature, it overrides the global declaration of supported languages  
3365 and MUST declare the complete set of language support available for that feature.

3366 If *Languages* is not defined, the global declaration of supported languages in *CompositeInstallable*  
3367 applies for the feature.

3368 See the *LanguageSelectionsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.4].

3369 ▪ **NestedFeature:** A *NestedFeature* must be explicitly selected. It is not assumed to be selected when  
3370 the parent feature is selected. Selection of a nested feature causes its parent feature to be selected,  
3371 but not vice-versa. The definition of a *NestedFeature* indicates that application of the *NestedFeature*  
3372 is dependent on application of the parent feature.

3373 ▪ **ContentElement:** The *ContentElement* referred to MUST be in the selectable content hierarchy  
3374 defined by the *SelectableContent* element.

3375 When the content reference is to a *CompositeUnit*, the composite and all content elements below it in  
3376 the content hierarchy are considered to be in scope when the feature is selected. Ease of referencing  
3377 a group of content from a feature can be one reason for using a composite in the content hierarchy.

3378 See the *ContentElementReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.9].

3379 ▪ **PackageFeatureReference:** Selection of a feature may result in selection of an aggregated  
3380 package's feature identified by a *ContainedPackage* element anywhere in the *BaseContent* or  
3381 *SelectableContent* hierarchies. A *PackageFeatureReference* identifies both the *ContainedPackage*  
3382 and the applicable features to be selected in that package.

3383 See the *PackageFeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.10].

3384 ▪ **RequiredFeature:** When the selection of one feature requires the selection of another feature, the  
3385 *RequiredFeature* can be used to specify this requirement.

3386 When two features identify each other as required features, they are always selected together.

3387 The selection of the defining feature MUST cause the required feature to be selected.

3388 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].

3389 ▪ **Variable:** *Variables* defined in features are useful when inputs to an artifact need to vary based on  
3390 which features are selected for a particular deployment. Artifact arguments can be defined in terms of  
3391 feature *Variables* to allow for this variation. When an artifact deploys selectable content, inputs to the  
3392 artifact that indicate the selections for a particular deployment can be associated with feature  
3393 selection in the SDD via feature *Variables*.

3394 For example, a *Feature* that deploys a trace facility might define a *Variable* called  
3395 "TraceSettings". The value of an argument to a base content artifact might define its value as  
3396 "\$({TraceSettings})". If the feature is selected, this argument would be used and its value would be  
3397 taken from the feature *Variable*. If the feature is not selected, the argument would be ignored.

3398 A *Variable* defined in a feature differs from *Variable* elements defined in content elements in one  
3399 important way. A reference to an undefined feature *Variable* is treated as an empty string and is  
3400 considered to be defined.

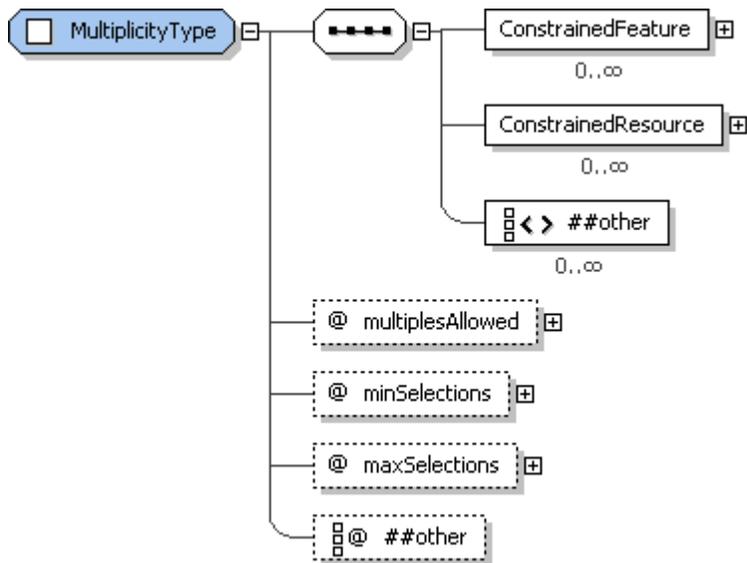
3401 See the *DerivedVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.13].

3402 ▪ **id:** Provides the means to reference a feature from other features.

3403 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
3404 log and trace messages.

3405 ▪ **addOn:** When a solution and the artifacts that deploy the various parts of the solution are designed in  
3406 a way that supports the addition of a particular feature at a later time (after the deployment of the  
3407 base solution), the *addOn* attribute is set to "true".

3408 **4.12.7 MultiplicityType**



3409  
3410 **Figure 90: MultiplicityType structure.**

3411 Some solutions allow multiple instances of some portion of the solution’s resources to be deployed as  
3412 part of the solution.

3413 For example, a solution that includes a server and a client may allow the deployment of multiple  
3414 clients. The deployment of each client may involve content elements that represent several different  
3415 resulting resources, features that control optional functionality of the client and configuration elements  
3416 that configure the client. All of these can be defined within a “Client” feature that declares a *Multiplicity*  
3417 element that indicates that multiple clients are allowed. Each selection or “instance” of the feature  
3418 results in the deployment of a client.

3419 The phrase “feature instance” is used to refer to the set of instances of all resources deployed when the  
3420 feature is selected. It does not imply that features themselves are represented as having lifecycle or that  
3421 features in the SDD correspond with feature instances in the deployment environment.

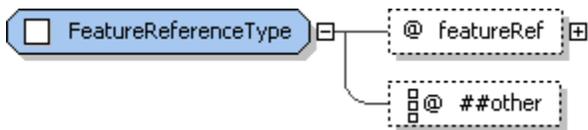
3422 **4.12.7.1 MultiplicityType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
ConstrainedFeature	FeatureReferenceType	0..*	A nested feature whose selection must be the same for all instances of the defining feature in a particular deployment.
ConstrainedResource	ConstrainedResourceType	0..*	A resource that must resolve to the same resource instance for all instances of the feature in a particular deployment.
	xsd:any	0..*	
multiplesAllowed	xsd:boolean	1	Indicates that multiple instances of the feature are allowed. **fixed value="true"
minSelections	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	The minimum number of instances of the feature that must be selected if the feature is selected at all. **default value="1"
maxSelections	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	That maximum number of instances of the feature that can be selected.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3423 **4.12.7.2 MultiplicityType Property Usage Notes**

- 3424 ▪ **ConstrainedFeature:** A feature with multiplicity may contain *NestedFeature* elements. When a  
3425 *NestedFeature* is identified in a *ConstrainedFeature*, then all instances of the defining *Feature* MUST  
3426 make the same selection choice for that *NestedFeature*.
- 3427 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- 3428 ▪ **ConstrainedResource:** The content elements selected by a feature may express constraints on  
3429 resources. When the resource constraints for each instance of a feature must resolve to the same  
3430 resource instance, or when all must resolve to unique resource instances, the resource is referred to  
3431 and the constraint type is identified in the *ConstrainedResource* element.
- 3432 See the *ConstrainedResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.11].
- 3433 ▪ **multiplesAllowed:** This is an attribute with a fixed value of “true”. It is included because all other  
3434 elements and attributes of *MultiplicityType* are optional. A feature that allows multiples but has no  
3435 need to define constraints on resources, features or number of instances would define a *Multiplicity*  
3436 element that had only the *multiplesAllowed* attribute.
- 3437 ▪ **minSelections:** When a feature is selected, if more than one instance of the feature is required,  
3438 *minSelections* MUST be specified.
- 3439 ▪ **maxSelections:** When a feature is selected, if there is a limit on the number of instances of the  
3440 feature that can be selected, *maxSelections* MUST be specified. If *maxSelections* is defined, it MUST  
3441 be equal to or greater than *minSelections*.

3442 **4.12.8 FeatureReferenceType**



3443 **Figure 91: FeatureReferenceType structure.**

3444 *FeatureReferenceType* provides a way to reference a feature defined in the SDD from within the SDD.

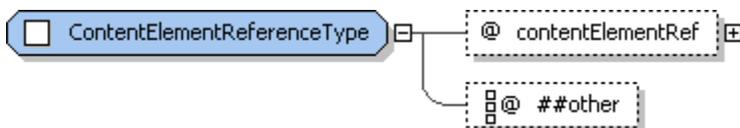
3446 **4.12.8.1 FeatureReferenceType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
featureRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a feature defined in the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3447 **4.12.8.2 FeatureReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3448 ▪ **featureRef:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a feature in the deployment descriptor.

3449 **4.12.9 ContentElementReferenceType**



3450 **Figure 92: ContentElementReferenceType structure.**

3451 *ContentElementReferenceType* provides a way to reference a content element defined in the SDD from  
3452 within a feature.  
3453

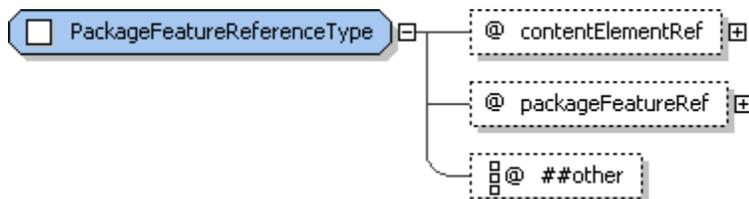
3454 **4.12.9.1 ContentElementReferenceType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
contentElementRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a content element in the deployment descriptor's selectable content.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3455 **4.12.9.2 ContentElementReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3456 **contentElementRef:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a content element in the deployment  
 3457 descriptor.

3458 **4.12.10 PackageFeatureReferenceType**



3459  
 3460 **Figure 93: PackageFeatureReferenceType structure.**

3461 *PackageFeatureReferenceType* provides a way to reference a feature defined in a referenced SDD. It  
 3462 identifies the *ContainedPackage* element that references the SDD and the feature in the referenced SDD.

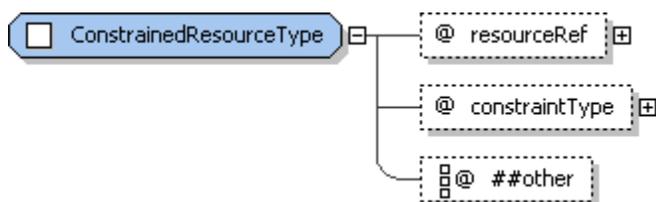
3463 **4.12.10.1 PackageFeatureReferenceType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
contentElementRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a content element in the deployment descriptor.
packageFeatureRef	xsd:NCName	1	The feature's id as defined in the referenced package's deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3464 **4.12.10.2 PackageFeatureReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3465 **contentElementRef:** This value MUST reference the *id* of a *ContainedPackage* element in  
 3466 *SelectableContent* or *BaseContent*. This reference does not cause the *ContainedPackage* to be in  
 3467 scope.
- 3468 **packageFeatureRef:** Specifies the value of the *id* of a feature element from the SDD of the  
 3469 *ContainedPackage* identified in *contentElementRef*. This feature reference is ignored when the  
 3470 *ContainedPackage* identified in *contentElementRef* is not in scope for a particular deployment.

3471 **4.12.11 ConstrainedResourceType**



3472  
 3473 **Figure 94: ConstrainedResourceType structure.**

3474 A resource may be required during deployment of the content selected by a *Feature* instance. The  
 3475 requirement may exist because the resource is used in a *Requirement* statement, referred to in a *Variable*  
 3476 whose value is in scope for the particular deployment or referred to in a constraint in a *Condition* that is  
 3477 satisfied for the particular deployment. This is an in-scope, required resource for the particular  
 3478 deployment. The SDD author may wish to constrain in-scope, required resources to resolve to the same  
 3479 resource instance for all *Feature* instances or to resolve to unique resource instances for each *Feature*  
 3480 instance. This is done using a *ConstrainedResource* element.

3481 **4.12.11.1 ConstrainedResourceType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	A reference to the constrained resource.
constraintType	MultiplicityConstraintType	0..1	Indicates whether the constraint requires every instance of the resource to be the same or requires every instance to be different. **default value="same"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

3482 **4.12.11.2 ConstrainedResourceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3483 ▪ **resourceRef:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 3484 ▪ **constraintType:** If there is a constraint, *constraintType* indicates that all resource instances be  
 3485 unique or that all resource instances be the same.  
 3486 For example, all clients for a particular solution may need to connect to the same database. In  
 3487 this case, *constraintType* would be set to *same*. In other cases, each of the deployed resources  
 3488 might need to use its own unique instance of a required resource. If there could be only one client  
 3489 per operating system, a constraint on the operating system resource would set *constraintType* to  
 3490 *unique*.  
 3491 See the *MultiplicityConstraintType* section for the enumeration values for *constraintType* [4.12.12].

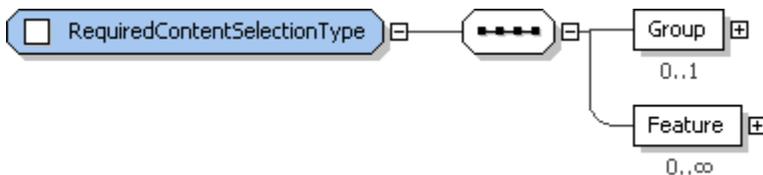
3492 **4.12.12 MultiplicityConstraintType**

3493 This is a simple type that is used to indicate how resources declared in the *Multiplicity* element should be  
 3494 treated. Enumeration values are *same*, *unique*, or if a value is not specified, the SDD author is indicating  
 3495 that it doesn't matter.

3496 **4.12.12.1 MultiplicityConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- 3497 ▪ **same:** The value *same* is used to indicate that the constraint requires all resource instances MUST  
 3498 be the same.
- 3499 ▪ **unique:** The value *unique* is used to indicate that each resource instance MUST be unique.

3500 **4.12.13 RequiredContentSelectionType**



3501 **Figure 95: RequiredContentSelectionType structure.**

3502 When one SDD aggregates another, there needs to be an indication of which *Groups* and/or *Features* in  
 3503 the aggregated SDD should be selected. The *RequiredContentSelection* of the referenced package  
 3504 element identifies which elements MUST be selected when the defining package is selected.  
 3505

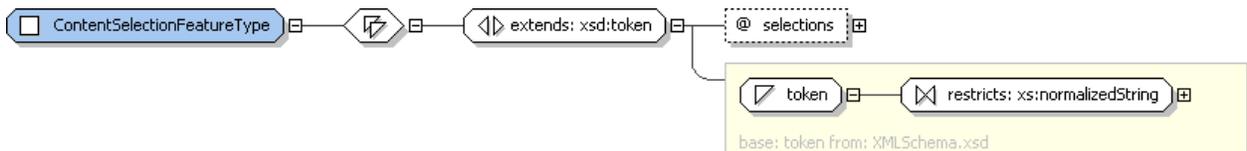
3506 **4.12.13.1 RequiredContentSelectionType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Group	xsd:token	0..1	A reference to the group to be selected.
Feature	ContentSelectionFeatureType	0..*	A reference to a feature to be selected.

3507 **4.12.13.2 RequiredContentSelectionType Property Usage Notes**

- 3508
- 3509
- **Group:** The *Group* value is the identifier of a *Group* in the aggregated SDD. This value **MUST** reference the *id* of a *Group* element in the deployment descriptor denoted by the referenced package.
  - **Feature:** The *Feature* element value is the identifier of the feature in the aggregated SDD. Attributes indicating the number of selections to be made can be included. The feature value **MUST** be the *id* of a feature element in the deployment descriptor denoted by the referenced package.
- 3513 If *Group* is also defined, *Feature* **SHOULD** be a feature that is not selected by the *Group*.
- 3514 See the *ContentSelectionFeatureType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.14].

3515 **4.12.14 ContentSelectionFeatureType**



3516 **Figure 96: ContentSelectionFeatureType structure.**

3517 The *ContentSelectionFeatureType* allows for the definition of the number of times a feature can be

3518 referenced if that feature includes a *Multiplicity* element.

3519

3520 For example, a software package has a server and client; the server can be deployed only on one

3521 machine, but the client can be deployed on multiple machines and configured to reference the one

3522 server. The server, for performance reasons, is limited to 10 client connections. To limit the number of

3523 times the client can be deployed, the *selections* attribute should be set to “10”.

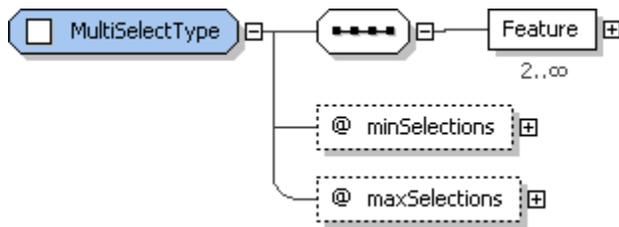
3524 **4.12.14.1 ContentSelectionFeatureType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
	[extends] xsd:token		See the xsd:token definition in [XSD].
selections	VariableExpressionType	0..1	The number of times a feature with <i>Multiplicity</i> in the referenced package should be deployed.

3525 **4.12.14.2 ContentSelectionFeatureType Property Usage Notes**

- 3526 See the `xsd:token` definition in [XSD] for inherited attributes and elements.
- **selections:** The value of *selections* **MUST** be, or resolve to, a positive integer that is within the bounds of the *minSelections* and *maxSelections* attributes defined in the *Multiplicity* element of the referenced feature.
- 3530 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].

3531 **4.12.15 MultiSelectType**



3532 **Figure 97: MultiSelectType structure.**

3534 *MultiSelectType* defines a way to associate features with a defined minimum and maximum number of  
 3535 selections allowed. A *MultiSelect* element MAY be used to support identification of mutually exclusive  
 3536 features.

3537 **4.12.15.1 MultiSelectType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Feature	FeatureReferenceType	2..*	A reference to a feature in the list of features defined in the MultiSelect element.
minSelections	xsd:nonNegativeInteger	0..1	Minimum number of features that must be selected. **default value="0"
maxSelections	xsd:positiveInteger	0..1	Maximum number of features that can be selected.

3538 **4.12.15.2 MultiSelectType Property Usage Notes**

- 3539 ▪ **Feature:** The value MUST reference the *id* of a feature element.  
 3540 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- 3541 ▪ **minSelections, maxSelections:** When it is not necessary that any of the features in the *MultiSelect*  
 3542 list be selected, the default of "0" can be used.  
 3543 Mutually exclusive features can be defined using a *MultiSelect* element with two features,  
 3544 *minSelections* set to "0" and *maxSelections* set to "1".  
 3545 If multiple instances of a single feature are selected via multiplicity, the set of multiple instances count  
 3546 only once toward the minimum and maximum. In other words, the count is based solely on the  
 3547 features selected, not on how many instances of each feature are selected.  
 3548 When *maxSelections* is not defined, all of the features in the *MultiSelect* MAY be selected for a  
 3549 particular deployment.  
 3550 If defined, the *maxSelections* value MUST be greater than or equal to the *minSelections* value and  
 3551 MUST be less than or equal to the number of referenced features.

3552 **4.13 Localization**

3553 Localization refers to enabling a particular piece of software to support one or more languages. Anything  
 3554 that needs to be deployed to provide support for a particular language in that software is considered  
 3555 localization content. Translated materials are a primary, but not the only, example of localization content.

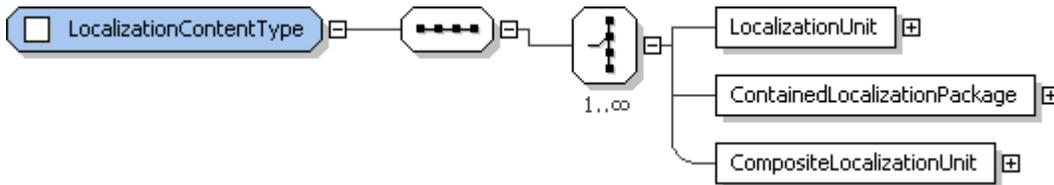
3556 Localization content is similar in many ways to other content, but there are important differences in how  
 3557 localization content is selected for deployment that lead to the need for a separate content hierarchy and  
 3558 separate types. Two criteria determine whether or not localization content is in scope for a particular  
 3559 deployment:

- 3560 ▪ The first criterion has to do with the language or languages supported by the localization content. At  
 3561 least one of the languages must be in scope for the content to be selected.

3562     ▪ The second criterion has to do with the availability of the resources to be localized—the localization  
 3563     base. The localization base may be a resource deployed by base or selectable content, or it may be a  
 3564     resource previously deployed and found in the deployment environment.

3565     The types described in this section support definition of metadata describing the criteria for determining  
 3566     when localization content is in scope.

3567     **4.13.1 LocalizationContentType**



3568     **Figure 98: LocalizationContentType structure.**

3570     The *LocalizationContent* tree contains all content created specifically to provide localization by deploying  
 3571     language-specific materials for a particular location. The localization support provided can be for content  
 3572     defined in the SDD or it can be for resources in the deployment environment that are not created or  
 3573     modified by deployment of the SDD. Each element defined in the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy is in  
 3574     scope for a particular deployment when it supports a language that is in scope for that deployment and  
 3575     when its localization base, if any, is available.

3576     **4.13.1.1 LocalizationContentType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
LocalizationUnit	LocalizationUnitType	0..*	Contains artifacts that create, modify or delete language support.
ContainedLocalizationPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0..*	Identifies an SDD whose contents are aggregated to create, modify or delete language support.
CompositeLocalizationUnit	CompositeLocalizationUnitType	0..*	An organizational element that groups localization content and defines metadata common to all the grouped content.

3577     **4.13.1.2 LocalizationContentType Property Usage Notes**

3578     ▪ **LocalizationUnit:** When there is no need to group a *LocalizationUnit* with other units that have  
 3579     common metadata, the *LocalizationUnit* is defined at the top level of the hierarchy. A *LocalizationUnit*  
 3580     defined at the top level of the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy is in scope for a particular deployment  
 3581     when its *Condition* and *LocalizationBase*, if any, evaluate to true and its *Languages* element, if any,  
 3582     defines a language that is in scope for the deployment.

3583     See the *LocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.2].

3584     ▪ **ContainedLocalizationPackage:** *ContainedLocalizationPackage* definitions include a list of  
 3585     languages supported by the contained package. The package need not be processed if none of those  
 3586     languages is in scope for a particular deployment.

3587     See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].

3588     ▪ **CompositeLocalizationUnit:** *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is a construct that allows organization of  
 3589     localization content in a way that is meaningful to the SDD author.

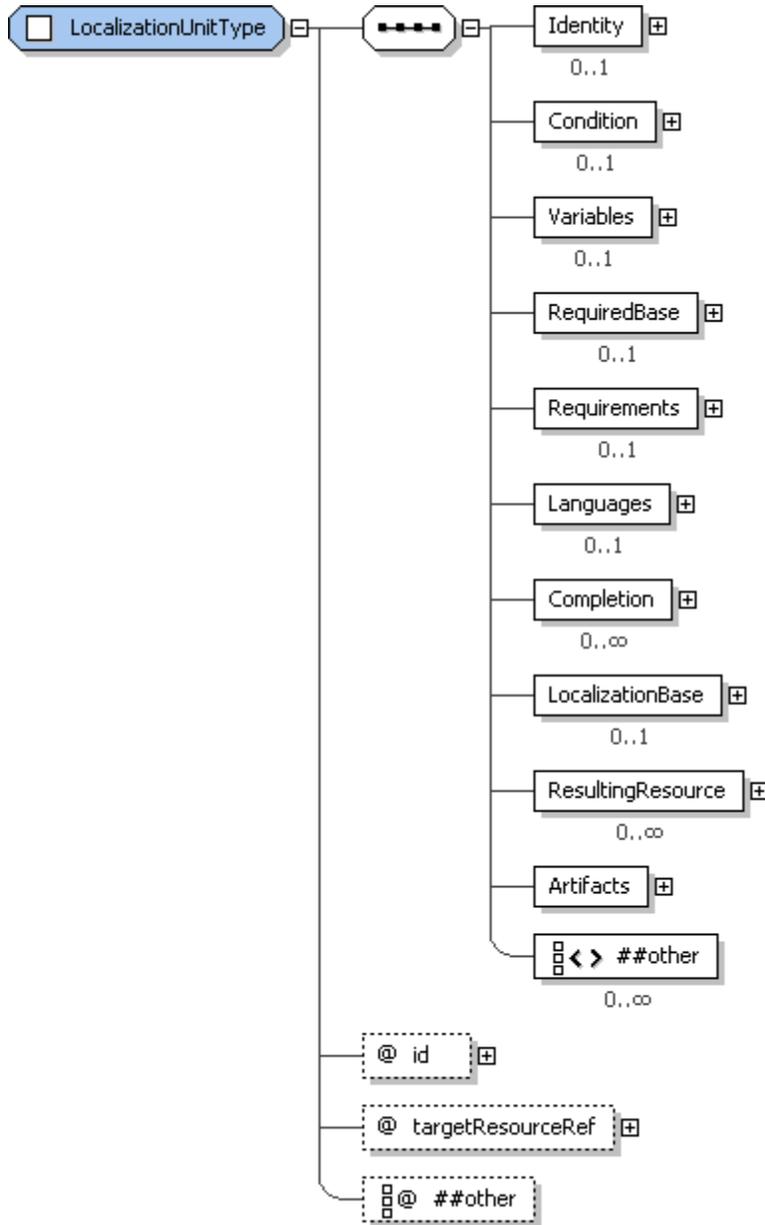
3590     One example use of a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is to group a set of *LocalizationUnits* that  
 3591     provide support for a variety of languages for the same resource. This eliminates the need to  
 3592     define identical *LocalizationBase* elements in every *LocalizationUnit*. It can be defined once in the  
 3593     *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.

3594 If evaluation of the *CompositeLocalizationUnit's Condition, Languages and LocalizationBase*  
 3595 determines that it is not selected for deployment, none of the content elements defined below it in the  
 3596 hierarchy are selected.

3597 *Requirements, Variables, Conditions and Completion* elements common to all child content elements  
 3598 MAY be defined once in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* rather than once in each nested element.

3599 See the *CompositeLocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.3].

3600 **4.13.2 LocalizationUnitType**



3601  
 3602 **Figure 99: LocalizationUnitType structure.**

3603 The *LocalizationUnit* element defines artifacts that deploy localization content for one group of resources  
 3604 whose translations are packaged together. Localization content consists of materials that have been  
 3605 translated into one or more languages.

### 4.13.2.1 LocalizationUnitType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	0..1	Human-understandable identity information about the LocalizationUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	0..1	Variables that can be referenced in the LocalizationUnit's requirement and artifact definitions.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	0..1	A resource that will be updated when the LocalizationUnit's UpdateArtifact is processed.
Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.
Languages	LanguagesType	0..1	The LocalizationUnit's artifacts contain materials translated into these languages.
Completion	CompletionType	0..*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
LocalizationBase	RequiredBaseType	0..1	A resource whose translatable characteristics will be localized by processing the LocalizationUnit's InstallArtifact.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0..*	A resource that will be installed or updated by processing the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.
Artifacts	InstallationArtifactsType	1	The set of artifacts associated with the LocalizationUnit.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the LocalizationUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
targetResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource that can process the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

### 4.13.2.2 LocalizationUnitType Property Usage Notes

3608 ■ **Identity:** The *Identity* element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of  
 3609 the provided localization resources as understood by the end user of the solution. *Identity* has  
 3610 elements that are common with elements in the corresponding *PackageDescriptor's PackageIdentity*  
 3611 element, for example, *Name* and *Version*. The values of these common elements SHOULD be the  
 3612 same as the corresponding *PackageIdentity* element values.

3613 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].

3614 ■ **Condition:** A *Condition* is used when the *LocalizationUnit's* content should be deployed only when  
 3615 certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3616 For example, for a package that has one artifact that should be processed when the operating  
 3617 system is Linux and another artifact that should be processed when the operating system is  
 3618 Windows, the *LocalizationUnit* defining metadata for the Linux artifact would have a condition on  
 3619 the operating system being Linux. The *LocalizationUnit* defining metadata for the Windows  
 3620 artifact would have a condition on the operating system being Windows.

3621 *Conditions* should not be used to identify the resource that will be localized by the *LocalizationUnit*.  
3622 The *LocalizationBase* element is used for that purpose. A *LocalizationUnit* can have both a *Condition*  
3623 and a *LocalizationBase*.

3624 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3625 ▪ **Variables:** A *Variables* element defines variables that can be used in the definition of requirements  
3626 and artifact parameters.

3627 When the deployment descriptor defines a single *LocalizationUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a  
3628 *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines can also be referred to in any element under *Topology*.

3629 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].

3630 ▪ **RequiredBase:** *RequiredBase* identifies the resource that must exist prior to applying the  
3631 *LocalizationUnit*'s update artifact.

3632 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

3633 ▪ **Requirements:** *Requirements* MUST be met prior to processing the *LocalizationUnit*'s artifacts.  
3634 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].

3635 ▪ **Languages:** *Languages* lists the languages of the translated material deployed by the  
3636 *LocalizationUnit*.

3637 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].

3638 ▪ **Completion:** A *Completion* element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a  
3639 system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the  
3640 artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.

3641 There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.  
3642 For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *install* operation, the *LocalizationUnit* must  
3643 define an *InstallArtifact*.

3644 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].

3645 ▪ **LocalizationBase:** *LocalizationBase* identifies the resource or resources that can be localized by  
3646 processing the *LocalizationUnit*. A resource that satisfies the constraints defined in the  
3647 *LocalizationBase* is one that can be localized by applying the *LocalizationUnit*.

3648 If no resource is found that meets the constraints defined in *LocalizationBase* during a particular  
3649 deployment, then the *LocalizationUnit* is not considered to be in scope for that deployment. This does  
3650 not represent an error.

3651 Translations created or modified by the *LocalizationUnit* are for human-readable text included with the  
3652 *LocalizationBase* resources.

3653 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].

3654 ▪ **ResultingResource:** The *ResultingResources* for a *LocalizationUnit* MUST NOT identify resources  
3655 other than localization resources.

3656 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].

3657 ▪ **Artifacts:** When the *LocalizationUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it  
3658 MUST define at least one artifact element and MAY define one of each type of artifact element  
3659 allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton *LocalizationUnit* implies support  
3660 for the associated operation.

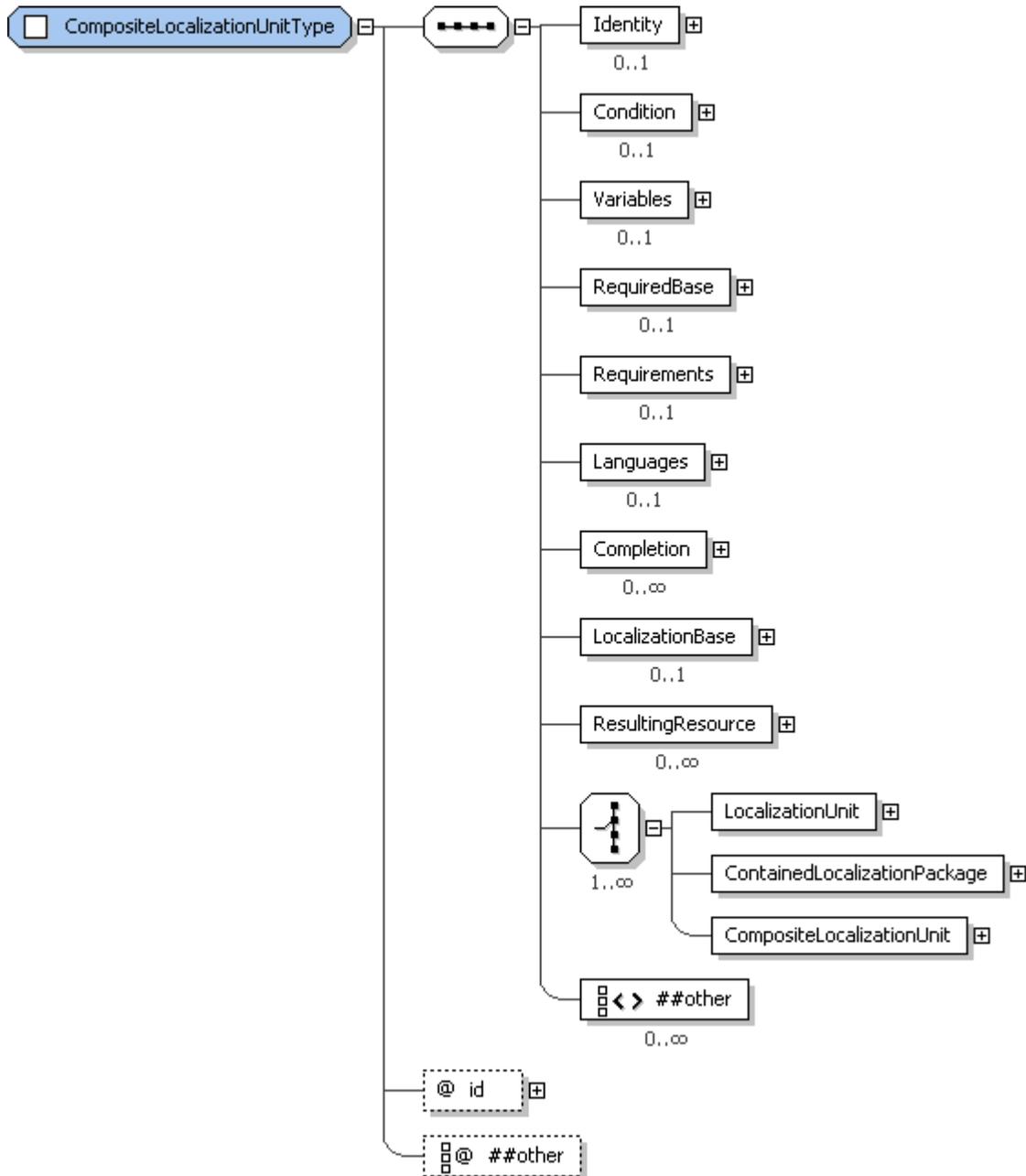
3661 When the *LocalizationUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one  
3662 artifact. The artifact defined MAY be any artifact allowed in a *LocalizationUnit* and it MUST support  
3663 the single top level *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. This does not mean the operation  
3664 associated with the artifact has to be the same as the one defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.

3665 For example, an install of a localization resource may be required during the update of the overall  
3666 solution, in which case the *LocalizationUnit* would define an *InstallArtifact* to support the top level  
3667 update operation.

3668 See the *InstallationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.4].

- 3669 ▪ **id**: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating  
3670 log and trace messages.
- 3671 ▪ **targetResourceRef**: The *targetResourceRef* attribute MUST reference the *id* of a resource element  
3672 in *Topology* that will process the *LocalizationUnit*'s artifacts to create or modify the localization  
3673 resources identified in the *LocalizationUnit*'s *ResultingResource* elements.

3674 **4.13.3 CompositeLocalizationUnitType**



3675  
3676 **Figure 100: CompositeLocalizationUnitType structure**

3677 *CompositeLocalizationUnitType* provides the type definition for all *CompositeLocalizationUnit* elements in  
3678 the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy. *CompositeLocalizationUnit* elements define nested localization content  
3679 elements and metadata that applies to all of the nested elements.

### 4.13.3.1 CompositeLocalizationUnitType Property Summary

Name	Type	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	0..1	Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeLocalizationUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	0..1	A condition that determines if the CompositeLocalizationUnit is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	0..1	Variables for use within the CompositeLocalizationUnit and content elements nested beneath it in the hierarchy.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	0..1	A resource that will be updated when the nested elements are processed.
Requirements	RequirementsType	0..1	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the nested content elements.
Languages	LanguagesType	0..1	Localization elements defined within CompositeLocalizationUnit contain materials translated into these languages.
Completion	CompletionType	0..*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
LocalizationBase	RequiredBaseType	0..1	A resource whose translatable characteristics will be localized by processing the nested content elements.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0..*	A localization resource that will be installed or updated by processing the nested content elements.
LocalizationUnit	LocalizationUnitType	0..*	Contains artifacts that will create, modify or delete language support.
ContainedLocalizationPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0..*	Identifies an SDD whose contents are aggregated to create, modify or delete language support.
CompositeLocalizationUnit	CompositeLocalizationUnitType	0..*	An organizational element that groups localization content and defines metadata common to all the grouped content.
	xsd:any	0..*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the CompositeLocalizationUnit that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0..*	

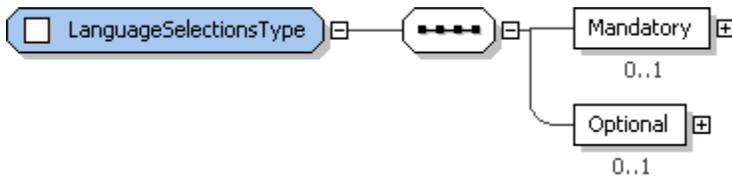
### 4.13.3.2 CompositeLocalizationUnitType Property Usage Notes

- **Identity:** The *CompositeLocalizationUnit*, like all content elements, is a unit of packaging. Its identity is the identity of a unit of packaging and may be useful to package management tools. The identity MAY be similar or identical to the identity of the *ResultingResource(s)*.

- 3685 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 3686 ▪ **Condition:** If the composite and the elements nested beneath it are applicable only in certain  
3687 environments, a *Condition* can be defined. When the *Condition* is not met, the composite and its  
3688 nested elements are not in scope.
- 3689 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- 3690 ▪ **Variables:** *Variables* used by more than one nested element can be defined in the  
3691 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* for efficiency both in composing and processing the SDD. *Variables* are  
3692 visible to all nested content elements.
- 3693 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].
- 3694 ▪ **RequiredBase:** If the processing of all the update artifacts in the nested content elements results in a  
3695 single resource being updated, that resource can be defined in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit*'s  
3696 *RequiredBase* element.
- 3697 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- 3698 ▪ **Requirements:** When a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is in scope for a particular deployment—as  
3699 determined by evaluation of its *LocalizationBase* and *Languages* properties—then its requirements  
3700 MUST be met.
- 3701 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 3702 ▪ **Languages:** The *Languages* element in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* MUST NOT be defined or  
3703 MUST define the union of all languages supported by the nested content elements. For nested  
3704 content elements to be evaluated to determine if they are in scope, the *CompositeLocalizationUnit*  
3705 must be in scope. When *Languages* is present in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit*, it must define one of  
3706 the languages in scope for the particular deployment if any of the nested elements are to be  
3707 evaluated. If *Languages* is not present in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit*, evaluation of all the child  
3708 elements still is required, as long as the other elements of *CompositeLocalizationUnit* have evaluated  
3709 to true. When the *Languages* and/or the *LocalizationBase* element in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is  
3710 not defined, the nested content elements must be evaluated to determine if they are in scope.
- 3711 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- 3712 ▪ **Completion:** When a particular completion action applies to all nested elements and should be  
3713 performed only once for the entire group, it can be defined in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* rather  
3714 than in each individual element.
- 3715 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
- 3716 ▪ **LocalizationBase:** A *LocalizationBase* element evaluates to true when the resource identified in the  
3717 base is created by a content element that is in scope for the deployment or it already exists in the  
3718 deployment environment.
- 3719 When the *LocalizationBase* is defined it must evaluate to true for any of the nested content elements  
3720 to be evaluated. If it evaluates to false, none of the nested content elements are in scope. If it  
3721 evaluates to true, the nested content elements may be in scope.
- 3722 When the *LocalizationBase* and/or the *Languages* element in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is not  
3723 defined, the nested content elements must be evaluated to determine if they are in scope.
- 3724 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- 3725 ▪ **ResultingResource:** If there are one or more resources that will be created when the nested content  
3726 elements are processed, they can be defined here.
- 3727 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- 3728 ▪ **LocalizationUnit:** *LocalizationUnits* defined within the composite typically have common metadata.  
3729 Metadata defined in the composite does not need to be repeated in the nested element. Definitions in  
3730 the nested *LocalizationUnit* are additions to those defined in the composite.
- 3731 See the *LocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.2].
- 3732 ▪ **ContainedLocalizationPackage:** A *ContainedLocalizationPackage* is defined in a  
3733 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* for the same reasons that a *LocalizationUnit* is—because it has metadata  
3734 in common with other elements defined in the composite.

- 3735 See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].
- 3736 ▪ **CompositeLocalizationUnit:** A *CompositeLocalizationUnit* can be nested inside another
- 3737 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* when some of the metadata is shared only by a subset of the elements
- 3738 nested in the higher level composite.
- 3739 For example, the higher level composite might contain operating system requirements that apply
- 3740 to all localization content and nested composites might group localization content by localization
- 3741 base.
- 3742 ▪ **id:** This *id* is not referred to by any other element in the deployment descriptor.
- 3743 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
- 3744 log and trace messages. It also may be useful for associating custom discovery logic with the
- 3745 *CompositeLocalizationUnit*'s resource-related elements.

3746 **4.13.4 LanguageSelectionsType**



3747  
3748 **Figure 101: LanguageSelectionsType structure.**

3749 *LanguageSelectionsType* provides the type definition for the *Languages* element in *CompositeInstallable*

3750 that describes the languages supported by the SDD as a whole. It also provides the type definition for the

3751 *Languages* element in features that allows a feature to override the SDD-wide definitions.

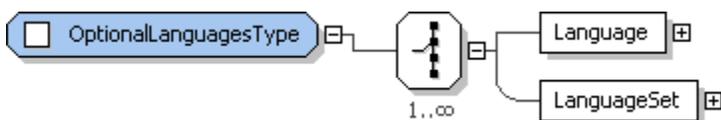
3752 **4.13.4.1 LanguageSelectionsType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Mandatory	LanguagesType	0..1	The set of languages that will be deployed.
Optional	OptionalLanguagesType	0..1	The set of language selections available to the deployer.

3753 **4.13.4.2 LanguageSelectionsType Property Usage Notes**

- 3754 ▪ **Mandatory:** The deployer has no ability to determine if a mandatory language will be deployed.
- 3755 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- 3756 ▪ **Optional:** Each language group in the list of optional languages defines a list of one or more
- 3757 languages that can be selected together.
- 3758 Language groups defined in *LanguageSelections* MAY be used to allow the deployer to select
- 3759 individual languages or to allow selection of multiple languages as a single choice.
- 3760 See the *OptionalLanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.5].

3761 **4.13.5 OptionalLanguagesType**



3762  
3763 **Figure 102: OptionalLanguagesType structure**

3764 *OptionalLanguagesType* supports definition of a language or sets of languages that the deployer can

3765 optionally choose for deployment. This type is used to define the global set of optional languages in

3766 *CompositeInstallable* as well as any *Feature*-specific set that overrides the global set for a particular

3767 *Feature*.

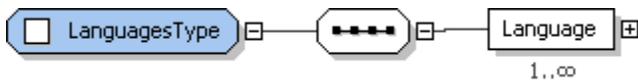
3768 **4.13.5.1 OptionalLanguagesType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Language	LanguageType	1..*	A single language that can be chosen individually.
LanguageSet	LanguageSetType	1..*	A set of languages that can be chosen together.

3769 **4.13.5.2 OptionalLanguagesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3770 **Language:** When the SDD author allows the deployer to individually select a language for  
 3771 deployment, it is defined in a *Language* element within *OptionalLanguages*.  
 3772 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and usage details [4.13.7].
- 3773 **LanguageSet:** When the SDD author allows the deployer to select languages for deployment as a  
 3774 set, it is defined in a *LanguageSet* element within *OptionalLanguages*.  
 3775 One example of a reason to define optional languages in a set rather than individually is for a  
 3776 group of languages that are packaged together and whose deployment cannot be separated.  
 3777 See the *LanguageSetType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.8].

3778 **4.13.6 LanguagesType**



3779 **Figure 103: LanguagesType structure.**  
 3780

3781 *LanguagesType* supports expression of a list of languages. It is used in the *Languages* elements of  
 3782 content elements to list languages supported by that content element. It is also used as the type of the  
 3783 *Mandatory* element that lists languages that are deployed by default.

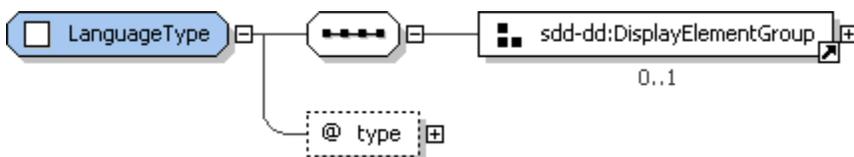
3784 **4.13.6.1 LanguagesType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
Language	LanguageType	1..*	A single language definition.

3785 **4.13.6.2 LanguagesType Property Usage Notes**

- 3786 **Language:** Each language definition MAY include display information as well as the language code  
 3787 that identifies the language.  
 3788 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.7].

3789 **4.13.7 LanguageType**



3790 **Figure 104: LanguageType structure.**  
 3791

3792 *LanguageType* supports the definition of display information and the language code for one language. It  
 3793 is used everywhere a language is defined in the SDD.

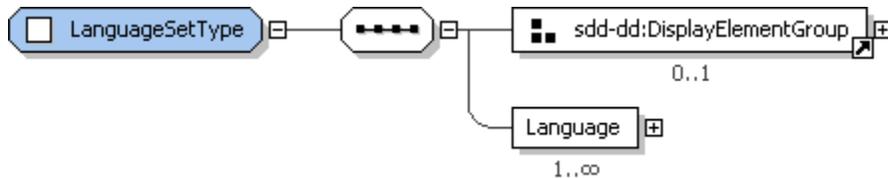
3794 **4.13.7.1 LanguageType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	A name for the language.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the language.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the language.
type	xsd:language	1	The locale code for the language.

3795 **4.13.7.2 LanguageType Property Usage Notes**

- 3796 **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
 3797 MUST provide a label for the language.
- 3798 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3799 **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
 3800 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the language.
- 3801 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 3802 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3803 **type:** The *type* attribute MUST be defined as a value that conforms to the set of language codes  
 3804 defined by [RFC3066].
- 3805 For example, “de” is a locale code for German and “en-US” is the locale code for English in the  
 3806 United States.

3807 **4.13.8 LanguageSetType**



3808 **Figure 105: LanguageSetType structure.**

3809 *LanguageSetType* provides the type definition for the *OptionalLanguages* elements of  
 3810 *CompositeInstallable* and *Feature*. It defines a set of languages that can be selected together.

3812 **4.13.8.1 LanguageSetType Property Summary**

Name	Type	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	0..1	A name for the set of languages.
Description	DisplayTextType	0..1	A description of the set of languages.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	0..1	A short description of the set of languages.
Language	LanguageType	1..*	A set of one or more language codes.

3813 **4.13.8.2 LanguageSetType Property Usage Notes**

- 3814 **DisplayName:** This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it  
 3815 MUST provide a label for the set of languages.
- 3816 For example, “Eastern European Languages” or “French, English and German”.
- 3817 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

3818   ▪ **Description, ShortDescription:** These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable  
3819 information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the set of languages.

3820    The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

3821    See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

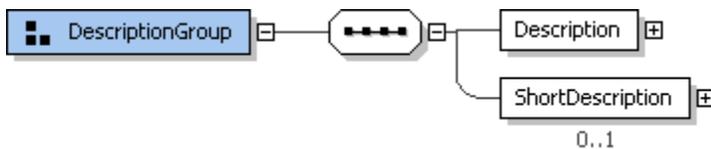
3822   ▪ **Language:** The languages defined in this element MUST be selected together.

3823    See the *LanguageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.7].

## 3824 4.14 Display Information

3825   There are many places throughout the SDD where translatable information intended for display to  
3826 humans MAY be defined. All display information definitions can include a *translationKey* that can be used  
3827 as an index into a file containing translations.

### 3828 4.14.1 DescriptionGroup



3829

3830 **Figure 106: DescriptionGroup structure.**

3831   The *DescriptionGroup* type is used throughout the SDD to provide human-readable, translatable,  
3832 descriptive-text elements.

#### 3833 4.14.1.1 DescriptionGroup Property Usage Notes

3834   ▪ **Description:** This is a description of the defining element unless usage notes for that element state  
3835 otherwise. It can be as long as necessary to provide a useful description.

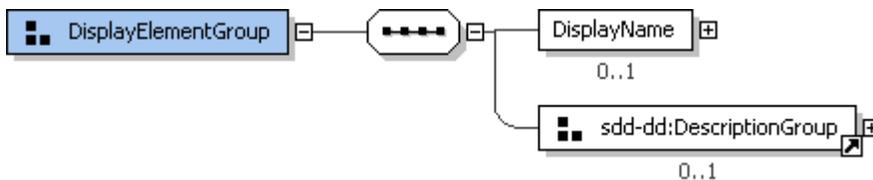
3836    The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

3837    See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

3838   ▪ **ShortDescription:** This is a short description of the defining element unless usage notes for that  
3839 element state that it refers to something else. It SHOULD provide a limited description that can be  
3840 used by tools where limited text is allowed, for example, fly-over help.

3841    See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

### 3842 4.14.2 DisplayElementGroup



3843

3844 **Figure 107: DisplayElementGroup structure.**

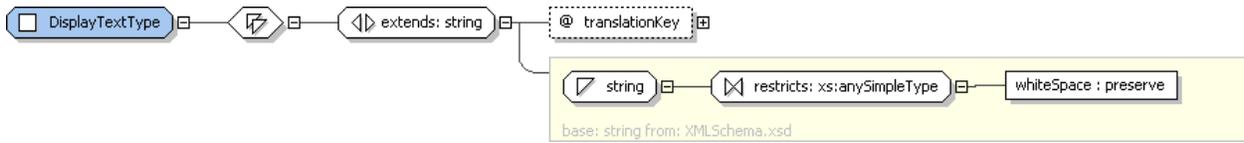
3845   The *DisplayElementGroup* is used throughout the package descriptor and deployment descriptor to  
3846 provide human-readable, translatable names, descriptions and/or short descriptions for a variety of  
3847 elements.

#### 3848 4.14.2.1 DisplayElementGroup Property Usage Notes

3849   ▪ **DisplayName:** This is a label for the defining element unless usage notes for that element state  
3850 otherwise.

3851    See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

3852 **4.14.3 DisplayTextType**



3853  
3854 **Figure 108: DisplayTextType Structure.**

3855 Elements of *DisplayTextType* define translatable strings and an optional key to translated text in language  
3856 bundle files. *DisplayTextType* extends the `xsd:string` type with an optional *translationKey* attribute.

3857 **4.14.3.1 DisplayTextType Property Usage Notes**

- 3858 ▪ **translationKey:** The *translationKey* attribute is a value that can be used as an index into a file  
3859 containing translations of *DisplayTextType* elements in the *DeploymentDescriptor* and/or  
3860 *PackageDescriptor*. The value of the *translationKey* MUST match an entry in the message bundle  
3861 referenced by the *descriptorLanguageBundle* attribute in the package descriptor.

3862

3863

## 5 Conformance

3864

### 5.1 General Conformance Statements

3865  
3866  
3867

An implementation MAY claim conformance to the entirety of the SDD specification (including all conformance levels) or one or more particular conformance levels, and/or one or more particular profiles (SDD conformance levels and profiles are detailed next).

3868

### 5.2 Conformance Levels

3869  
3870  
3871  
3872  
3873  
3874

An SDD conformance level (CL) is defined, consistent with **[CONFORM]**, as a subset of the schema intended to enable a certain set of capabilities to be achieved, based on SDDs that restrict their content to the particular CL. The purpose of conformance levels is to allow subsets of the full set of capabilities that can be expressed using an SDD to be implemented. The proper subsets are expected to be easier to implement, but still offer features, value and interoperability that make it worthwhile to implement a particular CL in certain circumstances.

3875  
3876  
3877

SDD conformance levels are designated as CL1 and CL2. CL1 is a proper subset of the schema; CL2 represents the full schema. CL1 is the minimal set or core of the specification that shall be implemented by all products. CL2 includes all of CL1 and consists of the entire specification.

3878

The following sections describe the defined CLs for SDD.

3879

#### 5.2.1 CL Capabilities

3880

Table 1 expresses the capabilities for each defined CL.

	Conformance Level 1	Conformance Level 2
<b>Description</b>	Single target, simple package.	Multi-target, aggregated packages; full deployment capabilities with all functions enabled by the SDD schema.
<b>Objective</b>	Serve as the “on-ramp” for SDD adoption. Deploy pre-prepared content that needs limited customization (basic parameters). Descriptors serve as contract between assembly and operations. Exemplary use case is “wrapping” existing packages in SDD.	Serve as the expected level for newly-authored non-legacy SDDs. Deploy newly-prepared content that has related components in a solution, with various topologies. Most robust specification (and corresponding run-time implementations) of SDD. Exemplary use case is non-trivial, non-legacy solution deployment.
<b>Included Schema Functions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Solution package with single component (singleton IU, CU, or LU; no composite) and single target topology</li> <li>• Solution package dependency checking for given environment</li> <li>• base installations and maintenance</li> <li>• Simple uninstall (based on information in single descriptor)</li> <li>• Ability to deploy existing artifact formats appropriate for the target</li> </ul>	All functions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregation (composites)</li> <li>• Features</li> <li>• Selectable features</li> <li>• Conditional content</li> <li>• Variable-target topology</li> <li>• Robust localization</li> </ul>

<b>Excluded Functions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>environment</li> <li>Some localization possible (localization of the units that are supplied)</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Features</li> <li>Selectable content</li> <li>Requisites</li> <li>Aggregation</li> <li>Multi-target topology</li> <li>Robust localization</li> <li>Replacements and modifications that change base resource/solution composition (including obsolescence)</li> <li>Backwards compatibility, range enforcement</li> <li>Verification of installation and configuration</li> </ul>	None

3881 **Table 1: SDD conformance level capabilities summary.**

## 3882 5.2.2 Conformance Level Differences

3883 CL1 SDDs can be used to describe the inputs, requirements and results of processing a single  
3884 deployment artifact. This artifact could be one that deploys, updates, configures or localizes software  
3885 resources. This is useful for simple deployments that require only a single artifact. CL2 SDDs add support  
3886 for aggregation of multiple artifacts and SDDs into solutions; definition of features that optionally select  
3887 content; and requisite software that can be deployed if needed to satisfy requirements. CL1 SDDs can be  
3888 aggregated by CL2 SDDs.

3889 For example, CL2 SDDs can describe a solution that consists of a Web server, an application server,  
3890 a database and one or more applications, in which each of these components is described by its own  
3891 individual SDD and an aggregating CL2 SDD aggregates them into the composite solution.

3892 The differences between CL1 and CL2 that are summarized in Table 1 are detailed next. These make  
3893 use of the information that is in the SDD schema; see **[CL1\_Schema]** for the CL1 schema files, and  
3894 **[CL2\_Schema]** for the CL2 schema files. The differences between the CL1 and CL2 schema files are  
3895 isolated to the “sdd-dd” namespace. The “sdd-common” and “sdd-pd” namespaces contain identical  
3896 schema files for each namespace with respect to CL1 and CL2.

### 3897 5.2.2.1 Type Definitions Modified in CL2

3898 A few SDD types used in CL1 have additional elements added in CL2. The types listed in the left column  
3899 of Table 2 exist in both CL1 and CL2 with different definitions. The elements in the right column are the  
3900 sub-elements added to the type definitions in CL2.

3901

Type Name	CL2 Sub-Element Names
DeploymentDescriptorType	Requisites CompositeInstallable
InstallationArtifactsType	RepairArtifact
ResultingResourceType	Relationship
ResultingChangeType	Relationship
ResourceConstraintGroup	UniquenessConstraint

Type Name	CL2 Sub-Element Names
	RelationshipConstraint
ConditionalResourceConstraintType	UniquenessConstraint RelationshipConstraint
RequirementType	Dependency
AlternativeRequirementType	Dependency

3902 **Table 2. Modified Types.**

### 3903 5.2.2.2 Type Structures Modified in CL2

3904 Several SDD types have altered structure between CL1 and CL2. The types listed in the left column of  
 3905 Table 3 are valid for both CL1 and CL2; however, valid structure for these types differs between CL1 and  
 3906 CL2, as shown in the center and right columns.

3907

Type	CL1 Structure	CL2 Structure
DeploymentDescriptorType	Choice of one of the following: <i>InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit,</i> <i>or LocalizationUnit</i>	Choice of one of the following: <i>InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, or</i> <i>LocalizationUnit,</i> or one or more <i>CompositeInstallable</i> elements
RequirementType	Sequence of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements	Unbounded choice of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements and <i>Dependency</i> elements
AlternativeRequirementType	Sequence of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements	Unbounded choice of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements and <i>Dependency</i> elements

3908 **Table 3. Altered types in CL2.**

### 3909 5.2.2.3 SDD Types Introduced in CL2

3910 As seen in Table 2, CL2 adds two new elements to *DeploymentDescriptor*. The *CompositeInstallable*  
 3911 element provides the definition of an aggregate deployment. *CompositeInstallable* is a complex element  
 3912 with many sub-elements. The second element added to *DeploymentDescriptor* is *Requisites*. *Requisites*  
 3913 is a list of references to SDDs that can be used, if needed, to satisfy deployment requirements defined in  
 3914 the *CompositeInstallable*.

3915 Table 4 includes the CL2 types that are introduced in support *CompositeInstallable* and *Requisites*

3916

BaseContentType	FeatureType	PackageFeatureReferenceType
CompositeInstallableType	GroupsType	ReferencedPackageType
CompositeLocalizationType	GroupType	RelationshipConstraintType
CompositeUnitType	InternalDependencyType	RelationshipType
ConstrainedResourceType	LanguageSelectionType	RequiredContentSelectionType
ContentElementReferenceType	LocalizationContentType	RequisitesType
ContentListGroup	MultiplicityConstraintType	ResourceMapType

ContentSelectionFeatureType	MultiplicityType	ResultingChangeMapType
DependencyType	MultiSelectType	ResultingResourceMapType
FeatureReferenceType	NestedFeatureType	SelectableContentType
FeaturesType	OptionalLanguagesType	UniquenessConstraintType

3917 **Table 4 SDD types introduced in CL2.**

### 3918 **5.2.2.4 Extended Enumeration Value in CL2**

3919 One SDD type has an additional enumeration value that is valid only for CL2-based implementations. The  
 3920 type listed in the left column of Table 5 is valid for both CL1 and CL2; however, the value in the right  
 3921 column is valid only for CL2.

3922

Type	CL2 Enumeration Value
OperationType	repair

3923 **Table 5 Extended enumeration value in CL2.**

## 3924 **5.3 Profiles**

3925 Profiles are intended to specify detailed information that can be used in an SDD to promote  
 3926 interoperability. An SDD profile is defined consistent with **[CONFORM]**, to identify the functionality,  
 3927 parameters, options and/or implementation requirements necessary to satisfy the requirements of a  
 3928 particular community of users. SDD profiles are intended to enable a specific set of use cases, typically in  
 3929 a particular domain. Profiles are considered largely orthogonal to CLs; whereas a CL is a subset of the  
 3930 schema, a profile specifies the usage of the schema, including appropriate conventions and content  
 3931 values, to accomplish a particular set of use cases (typically in a particular domain).

3932 A *starter profile* is initially defined with version 1.0 of this specification and is published separately. This  
 3933 starter profile defines terms and patterns that can be used to generate other specific profiles and  
 3934 addresses the content values that are required to support the SDD XML examples that also are published  
 3935 separately.

3936 The starter profile is not intended to be a complete vocabulary for all SDDs, but rather to illustrate the  
 3937 format and provide example content so that additional profiles can be generated in the future. The starter  
 3938 profile leverages and extends the CIM standard **[CIM]** for many content values, but other profiles MAY  
 3939 use other content values.

3940 Other profiles MAY be published by the TC in the future, and new profiles can be created as specified in  
 3941 5.3.1.

3942 An implementation MAY claim conformance to one or more particular profiles.

### 3943 **5.3.1 Profile Creation**

3944 The SDD TC has created a starter profile as described in 5.3. The SDD TC MAY create additional profiles  
 3945 in the future.

3946 Others MAY create SDD profiles for use cases, domains, or user communities that are not addressed by  
 3947 the currently available profiles from the SDD TC. When creating new profiles, it is RECOMMENDED that  
 3948 profile creators follow the model of the starter profile and any existing profiles and reuse content from  
 3949 existing standards where possible. It is also RECOMMENDED that implementations publish the profile(s)  
 3950 that they support.

### 3951 **5.3.2 Profile Publication**

3952 The SDD TC publishes the starter profile and MAY publish any other profiles created by the SDD TC.

3953 Profiles created by the SDD TC SHALL be made available by the SDD TC.  
3954 Profiles created by others MAY be published and made available by those parties and/or submitted to the  
3955 SDD TC for consideration for publication by the SDD TC, according to the OASIS policies and  
3956 procedures, including intellectual property rights. The SDD TC MAY publish and make available the new  
3957 profiles through majority vote of the TC.

### 3958 **5.3.3 Profile Applicability**

3959 Profiles are applicable to particular usage models, domains and/or user communities. An implementation  
3960 MAY claim conformance to one or more particular profiles.

## 3961 **5.4 Compatibility Statements**

3962 Versions of the specification use the version value defined in the *schemaVersion* attribute described in  
3963 section 3.2. New versions of the specification MAY update the conformance level contents.

3964 Profiles also use the *schemaVersion* attribute described in section 3.2. New versions of profiles MAY  
3965 update the profile contents.

3966 Minor version updates of the schema, specification and profiles SHALL be backward-compatible with  
3967 proceeding major versions (for example, all “1.x” versions are backward-compatible with version “1.0”).

3968 Moreover, minor version updates of the schema, specification and profiles SHALL be backward-  
3969 compatible with proceeding minor versions of the same major version (for example, version “1.4” is  
3970 backward-compatible with versions “1.3”, “1.2”, “1.1” and “1.0”).

3971 Major version updates of the schema, specification and profiles are NOT REQUIRED to be backward-  
3972 compatible with previous versions and MAY NOT be backward-compatible with previous versions. For  
3973 example, if non-backward-compatible changes occur in version “1.x”, the new version is “2.0”. Although  
3974 new major versions MAY have substantial backward compatibility, backward compatibility is not  
3975 guaranteed for all aspects of the schema across major versions.

## 3976 **5.5 Conformance Clause**

### 3977 **5.5.1 Conformance for Users of This Specification**

3978 An SDD conforms to this specification if it conforms to the SDD schema and follows the syntax and  
3979 semantics defined in the normative portions of this specification. An SDD MAY conform to conformance  
3980 levels CL1 or CL2.

3981 An implementation conforms to this specification if it conforms to, at minimum, conformance level CL1 of  
3982 the SDD schema; supports at least one SDD profile; and follows the syntax and semantics defined in the  
3983 normative portions of this specification. An implementation MAY support conformance levels CL1 or CL2  
3984 and MAY support additional SDD profiles.

### 3985 **5.5.2 Conformance for This Specification Itself**

3986 This section is the conformance claim for how this document conforms to **[CONFORM]**. The conformance  
3987 issues in section 8 of **[CONFORM]** apply to this document as follows:

- 3988 1. This document is applicable to SDDs as defined in this specification. To claim conformance to this  
3989 document, all the requirements in section 5.5.1 SHALL be met.
- 3990 2. This document MAY be implemented in its entirety or in defined conformance levels CL1 and CL2.  
3991 This document does not define profiles, but the SDD TC MAY define profiles that MAY be  
3992 implemented.
- 3993 3. This document allows extensions. Each implementation SHALL fully support all required  
3994 functionality of the specification exactly as specified. The use of extensions SHALL NOT  
3995 contradict nor cause the non-conformance of functionality defined in the specification.
- 3996 4. This document contains no discretionary items.

3997 5. This document's normative language is English. Translation into other languages is permitted.  
3998

3999

---

## A. Schema File List

4000 The SDD schema is implemented by multiple schema files. Types defined in each file are identified by a  
4001 specific namespace prefix, as indicated in the following list:

4002     ▪ cd04-sdd-common-1.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-common)  
4003         Contains definitions of common types used in the SDD specification, including identity and fix-identity  
4004         types, UUID and version types, and the display text type.

4005         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/CL1Schema/cs01-sdd-common-1.0.xsd>

4006         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/FullSchema/cs01-sdd-common-1.0.xsd>

4007     ▪ cd04-sdd-deploymentDescriptor-1.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-dd)

4008         Contains the deployment descriptor specification, including various content types.

4009         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/CL1Schema/cs01-sdd-deploymentDescriptor-1.0.xsd>

4010         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/FullSchema/cs01-sdd-deploymentDescriptor-1.0.xsd>

4011     ▪ cd04-sdd-packageDescriptor-1.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-pd)

4012         Contains the package descriptor specification, including types related to packages and files.

4013         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/CL1Schema/cs01-sdd-packageDescriptor-1.0.xsd>

4014         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/cs01/FullSchema/cs01-sdd-packageDescriptor-1.0.xsd>

4015

4016 Example SDDs showing the use of the schema can be found at the following address.

4017         <http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/v1.0/sdd-examples-v1.0.zip>

4018

4019

---

## B. Acknowledgements

4020 The following individuals have participated in the creation of this specification and are gratefully  
4021 acknowledged:

4022 **Participants:**

4023 Dr. Howard Abrams, CA  
4024 Mr. Joshua Allen, Macrovision Corporation  
4025 Mr. Rich Aquino, Macrovision Corporation  
4026 Mr. Lazar Borissov, SAP AG  
4027 Ms. Debra Danielson, CA  
4028 Mr. Robert DeMason, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4029 Mr. Robert Dickau, Macrovision Corporation  
4030 Mr. Quenio dos Santos, Macrovision Corporation  
4031 Mrs. Christine Draper, IBM  
4032 Mr. Adrian Dunston, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4033 Mr. James Falkner, Sun Microsystems  
4034 Mr. Keisuke Fukui, Fujitsu Limited  
4035 Mr. Randy George, IBM  
4036 Mr. Nico Groh, SAP AG  
4037 Mr. Frank Heine, SAP AG  
4038 Ms. Merri Jensen, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4039 Dr. Hiro Kishimoto, Fujitsu Limited  
4040 Mr. Thomas Klink, SAP AG  
4041 Mr. Jason Losh, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4042 Ms. Julia McCarthy, IBM  
4043 Mr. Art Middlekauff, Macrovision Corporation  
4044 Mr. Brent Miller, IBM  
4045 Mr. Ed Overton, SAS Institute, Inc.  
4046 Mr. Chris Robsahm, SAP AG  
4047 Dr. David Snelling, Fujitsu Limited  
4048 Mr. Thomas Studwell, Dell  
4049 Dr. Weijia (John) Zhang, Dell

4050  
4051